

| HFDG Section Number and Name | In HFDG Chapter & Page | In HFDS Chapter & Section | In HFDS Chapter & Page |
|--|---|--|---|
| Chapter 1 | | | |
| 1.3.1 HFDG in system acquisition | 1-2 | 1.61 | 1-6 |
| 1.3.2 Human factors importance for COTS & NDI procurements | 1-2 | 1.7 | 1-9 |
| 1.4.1.1 Identification and use of the HFDG rules - "shall" "should" advice | 1-3 | 1.8.5.2 | 1-12 |
| 1.4.1.2 Measurements | 1-3 | 1.8.1 | 1-11 |
| 1.4.1.3 Topical completeness | 1-4 | 1.8.2 | 1-11 |
| 1.4.2 Features that help find and use HFDG information | 1-4 | 1.8 | 1-10 |
| 1.4.2.1 Section contents can help build checklists | 1-4 | 1.8.5.1 | 1-1, 12 |
| 1.4.2.2 Heading and text locations | 1-4 | 1.8.4 | 1-12 |
| 1.4.2.3 Headers and footers for navigation | 1-4 | 1.8.3 | 1-11 |
| 1.4.2.5 Topical index helps find information | 1-5 | 1.8.7 | 1-14 |
| Chapter 4 | | | |
| 4.1.1 Simplicity in design | 4-1 | 2.2.1 | 2-2 |
| 4.1.2 Hardware and interface standardization | 4-1 | 2.4.1 | 2-3 |
| 4.1.3 Software standardization | 4-1 | 2.4.1 | 2-3 |
| 4.1.4 Standardization for maintenance | 4-2 | 4.1.2 | 4-3 |
| 4.1.5 Distinctive identification, interfaces, and interconnections | 4-2 | 2.4.2, 3 | 2-2 |
| 4.1.6 Design for common tools | 4-2 | 2.8.1 | 2-2 |
| 4.1.7 Safety | 4-2 | 2.5.1 | 2-2 |
| 4.1.8 Fail-safe design | 4-2 | 2.5.2 | 2-2 |
| 4.1.9 Ruggedness | 4-2 | 2.1.1 | 2-2 |
| 4.2.2 Environment | 4-3 | 13.1 | 13-2 |
| 4.2.3 Protection and safety | 4-3 | 4.1.2.6 | 4-4 |
| 4.2.4 Work space | 4-4 | 10.1 | 2-2 |
| 4.2.5 Design for the disabled | 4-4 | 2.6.12 | 2-8 |
| 4.3.1 Function allocation | 4-5 | 3.11 | 3-21 |
| 4.3.2 Operation and maintenance effectiveness | 4-5 | 10.3.2 | 10-25 |
| 4.3.3 Human-machine interface testing | 4-5 | 10.3.2 | 10-25 |
| 4.3.4 Human interactions | 4-5 | 10.3.2 | 10-25 |
| 4.3.5 Human physical interactions | 4-5 | 10.1.2 | 10-1 |
| Chapter 5 | | | |
| 5.1.1 Consistency | 5-2 | 3.4.2 | 3-08 |
| 5.1.2 Logical and explicit structure | 5-2 | 3.4.4 | 3-08 |
| 5.1.3 Simplicity | 5-2 | 3.4.1 | 3-08 |

| | | | |
|---|------|---------------------|--------------|
| 5.1.4 Situation awareness | 5-2 | 3.15.4, 2.6 | 3-33 |
| 5.1.5 Task compatibilities | 5-3 | 3.1.23 | 3-5 |
| 5.1.6 Human roles and workload | 5-3 | 3.1.11 | 3-3 |
| 5.2.1 Role of Automation | 5-4 | 3.3,3.4,3.5 | 3-7,8,9 |
| 5.2.3 Responsible humans need to be involved and informed | 5-4 | 3.1.5 | 3-02 |
| 5.2.4 Involvement through meaningful tasks | 5-5 | 3.1.7. | 3-01 |
| 5.2.5 Simple subsystem performing human-like tasks | 5-5 | 3.15.1 | 3-33 |
| 5.2.6 Predictable automated subsystems | 5-5 | 3.1.19 | 3-02 |
| 5.2.7 Monitoring automated subsystems | 5-6 | 3.1.20 | 3-02 |
| 5.2.8 Monitoring humans | 5-6 | 3.1.18 | 3-01 |
| 5.2.9 Automatic only with good reason | 5-6 | 3.1.3 | 3-01 |
| 5.2.10 Cost effectiveness of automation | 5-6 | 3.1.4 | 3-01 |
| 5.2.11 Analysis and evaluation of human functions | 5-6 | 3.2.2 | 3-01 |
| 5.2.13 Backup for automation | 5-7 | 3.10.4 | 3-19 |
| 5.2.15 Failure of control automation | 5-7 | 3.10.9 | 3-21 |
| 5.2.16 Workload consideration | 5-7 | 3.1.11 | 3-03 |
| 5.2.17 Human error resistance and error tolerance | 5-8 | 3.1.18 | 3-04 |
| 5.2.18 Comprehensible automation | 5-8 | 3.6 | 3-10 |
| 5.2.19 Display integration | 5-8 | 3.12.14 | 3-25 |
| 5.2.20 Information automation for situation awareness | 5-9 | 3.1.19 | 3-5 |
| 5.2.22 Knowledge-based aids | 5-9 | 3.14 | 3-28 |
| 5.3.1 Automated subsystems as integrated "team players" | 5-10 | 3.3,3.4,3.5, | 3-7,8,9 |
| 5.6.2 Avoiding disciplinary impacts on human interface design | 5-18 | 3.4.3 | 3-8 |
| 5.6.3 Early interface design for usability and acceptability | 5-19 | 3.2.1 | 3-6 |
| 5.6.4 Integrated displays and graphical representations | 5-19 | 3.12.14 | 3-25 |
| 5.7.2 Graphical displays for monitoring system and subsystem status | 5-19 | 3.4.6 | 3-8 |
| 5.7.3 Updating frequency | 5-20 | 3.12.2 | 3-23 |
| 5.7.4 Accessibility of status information | 5-20 | 3.1.2.2, 3.12.11 | 3-23 3-25 |
| 5.7.5 Dedicated display | 5-20 | 7.1.2.11 | 7-4 |
| 5.7.6 Control of the monitoring subsystem | 5-20 | 7.2.1.9 | 7-7 |
| 5.7.8 Information presentation and task compatibility | 5-21 | 3.12.6 | 3-24 |
| 5.7.9 Presentation of status and diagnostic information | 5-21 | 3.12.13 | 3-25 |
| 5.7.10 Alert and alarm characteristics | 5-22 | 7.1.1.3 | 7-1 |
| 5.7.11 False alarm rate | 5-23 | 3.9.1 | 3-18 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|------|
| 5.10.3 Simple to train, learn, and use | 5-28 | 2.6.4 | 2-6 |
| Chapter 6 | | | |
| 6.1.1.1 General design guidance | 6-2 | 4.1.1.1 | 4-2 |
| 6.1.2.1 Noninterruption of continuous operation | 6-3 | 4.1.2.1 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.2.2 Redundancy to prevent interruption | 6-3 | 4.1.2.2 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.2.3 Degraded operation | 6-3 | 4.1.2.3 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.2.4 Automation of fault detection and isolation | 6-3 | 4.1.2.4 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.2.5 Equipment independence for maintenance | 6-3 | 4.1.2.5 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.2.6 Designing for safety of maintainers | 6-3 | 4.1.2.6 | 4-4 |
| 6.1.2.7 Dividing equipment into modules | 6-3 | 4.1.2.7 | 4-4 |
| 6.1.2.9 Replacement of failed components | 6-4 | 4.1.2.8 | 4-4 |
| 6.1.3.1 Use of existing items | 6-4 | 4.1.1.2 | 4-3 |
| 6.1.3.2 Interchangeability of items | 6-4 | 4.3.2 | 4-17 |
| 6.1.3.3 Noninterchangeable items | 6-4 | 4.3.2 | 4-17 |
| 6.1.3.4 Minimize maintenance equipment and tools | 6-4 | 4.14.1.1 | 4-11 |
| 6.1.3.5 Use common test equipment and tools | 6-4 | 4.14.1.2,3 | 4-11 |
| 6.1.3.6 Special tools | 6-4 | 4.14.1.4 | 4-11 |
| 6.1.4.1 Optimize balance between use, maintenance, and special skills | 6-5 | 4.1.3.1 | 4-4 |
| 6.1.4.2 Optimize balance between ease of use and training | 6-5 | 4.1.3.2 | 4-4 |
| 6.1.5.1 Ease of servicing | 6-5 | 4.1.4.1 | 4-5 |
| 6.1.5.2 Minimize maintenance time | 6-5 | 4.1.4.2 | 4-5 |
| 6.2 Designing equipment for handling | 6-5 | 4.2 | 4.5 |
| 6.2.1.1 Maintainer efficiency and safety | 6-5 | 4.1.1.1 | 4-2 |
| 6.2.1.2 Prevention of damage | 6-5 | 4.2.1.1 | 4-5 |
| 6.2.1.3 Minimal number of maintainers | 6-5 | 4.2.1.2 | 4-5 |
| 6.2.2.1 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be lifted by one person | 6-6 | 4.2.2.1 | 4-6 |
| Exhibit 6.2.2.1 Maximum weight limits for objects lifted by one person using both hands | 6-6 | 4.2.2.1 | 4-6 |
| 6.2.2.2 Lifting in the presence of obstacles | 6-6 | 4.2.2.2 | 4-6 |
| 6.2.2.3 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be lifted by two people | 6-6 | 4.2.2.3 | 4-6 |
| 6.2.2.4 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be lifted by three or more people | 6-6 | 4.2.2.4 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.5 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be carried by one person | 6-7 | 4.2.2.5 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.6 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be carried by more than one person | 6-7 | 4.2.2.6 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.7 Maximum weight of units of equipment to be carried by more than two people | 6-7 | 4.2.2.7 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.8 Lifting eyes or jacking points | 6-7 | 4.2.2.8 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.9 Reducing weight by removing parts | 6-7 | 4.2.2.9 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.2.10 Labeling heavy units | 6-7 | 4.2.2.10 | 4-7 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-----------|-------|
| 6.2.3.1 Desirable size | 6-7 | 4.2.3.1 | 4-8 |
| 6.2.3.2 Reducing size by removing parts | 6-7 | 4.2.3.2 | 4-8 |
| 6.2.4.1 Avoiding protuberances | 6-8 | 4.2.4.1 | 4-8 |
| 6.2.4.2 Removing protuberances | 6-8 | 4.2.4.2 | 4-8 |
| 6.2.5.1.1 Units of equipment designed for carrying | 6-8 | 4.2.5.1.1 | 4-8 |
| 6.2.5.1.2 Units of equipment weighing less than 4.5 kg (10 lb) | 6-8 | 4.2.5.1.2 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.1.3 Units of equipment weighing between 4.5 and 18 kg (10 to 40 lb) | 6-8 | 4.2.5.1.3 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.1.4 Units of equipment weighing between 18 and 68 kg (40 to 150 lb) | 6-8 | 4.2.5.1.4 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.1.5 Force limits | 6-8 | 4.2.5.1.5 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.2 Handle characteristics | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.2.1 Handle comfort | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2.1 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.2.2 Handle surface | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2.2 | 4-9 |
| 6.2.5.2.3 Handle conductivity | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2.3 | 4-10 |
| 6.2.5.2.4 Handle attachment | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2.4 | 4-10 |
| 6.2.5.2.5 Recessed, hinged, and folding handles | 6-9 | 4.13.5.4 | 4-111 |
| 6.2.5.2.6 Stops for hinged or folding handles | 6-9 | 4.2.5.2.5 | 4-10 |
| 6.2.5.3.1 Minimum handle dimensions by type of handle and hand covering | 6-10 | 4.2.5.3.1 | 4-10 |
| 6.2.5.3.2 Minimum handle diameter by weight of unit of equipment | 6-11 | 4.2.5.3.2 | 4-12 |
| 6.2.5.3.3 Finger curl | 6-11 | 4.2.5.3.3 | 4-12 |
| 6.2.5.4.1 Single handles | 6-11 | 4.2.5.4.1 | 4-12 |
| 6.2.5.4.2 Pairs of handles | 6-11 | 4.2.5.4.2 | 4-12 |
| 6.2.5.4.3 Exposure to hazards | 6-11 | 4.2.5.4.3 | 4-12 |
| 6.2.5.4.4 Structural clearance | 6-11 | 4.2.5.4.4 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.6.1 Location of grasp area | 6-11 | 4.2.6.1 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.6.2 Grasp area finish | 6-11 | 4.2.6.2 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.6.3 Grasp area material | 6-12 | 4.2.6.3 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.6.4 Grasp area conductivity | 6-12 | 4.2.6.4 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.7.1 Prevention of damage | 6-12 | 4.2.7.1 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.7.2 Integral to chassis | 6-12 | 4.2.7.2 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.7.3 Handles as stands or rests | 6-12 | 4.2.7.3 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.1 Guides, tracks, and stops | 6-12 | 4.2.8.1 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.2 Prevention of improper mounting | 6-12 | 4.2.8.2 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.3 Alignment of light-weight units of equipment | 6-12 | 4.2.8.3 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.4 Alignment of heavy units of equipment | 6-12 | 4.2.8.4 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.5 Labeling units of equipment | 6-12 | 4.2.8.5 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.8.6 Labeling insertion holes | 6-12 | 4.2.8.6 | 4-13 |
| 6.2.9.1 Alignment aids | 6-13 | 4.2.9.1 | 4-14 |
| 6.2.9.2 Quick-action connectors | 6-13 | 4.2.9.2 | 4-14 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-----------|------|
| 6.2.9.3 Fasteners | 6-13 | 4.2.9.3 | 4-14 |
| 6.2.9.4 Latches | 6-13 | 4.2.9.4 | 4-15 |
| 6.2.10.1 Lifting eyes or jacking points | 6-13 | 4.2.2.8 | 4-7 |
| 6.2.10.2 Location of assistance points | 6-13 | 4.2.10.1 | 4-15 |
| 6.2.10.3 Labeling | 6-13 | 4.2.10.2 | 4-15 |
| 6.3.1 Unitization of equipment | 6-14 | 4.3.1 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.1 Functional independence | 6-14 | 4.3.1.1 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.2 Packaging equipment | 6-14 | 4.3.1.2 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.3 Ease of installation | 6-14 | 4.3.1.3 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.4 Independent adjustment | 6-14 | 4.3.1.4 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.5 Handling by one person | 6-14 | 4.3.1.5 | 4-16 |
| 6.3.1.6 Interconnectivity | 6-15 | 4.3.1.6 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.1.7 Protrusions | 6-15 | 4.3.1.7 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.1.8 Prevention of incorrect mounting | 6-15 | 4.3.1.8 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.2.1 Interchangeability of equivalent units of equipment | 6-15 | 4.3.2.1 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.2.2 Identifiability of interchangeable units of equipment | 6-15 | 4.3.2.2 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.2.3 Noninterchangeability of nonequivalent units of equipment | 6-15 | 4.3.2.3 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.2.4 Identifiability of noninterchangeable units of equipment | 6-15 | 4.3.2.4 | 4-17 |
| 6.3.3.1 General | 6-15 | 4.3.3.1 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.1 Mounting frequently-moved units of equipment | 6-15 | 4.3.3.1.1 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.2 Mounting of heavy units of equipment | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.2 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.3 Access to rear or bottom of units of equipment | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.3 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.4 Avoidance of instability | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.4 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.5 Attachment of equipment | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.5 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.6 Ease of moving mounted units of equipment | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.6 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.7 Maximum force to move mounted units of equipment | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.7 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.1.8 Guards and shields | 6-16 | 4.3.3.1.8 | 4-18 |
| 6.3.3.2.1 Limit stops | 6-16 | 4.3.3.2.1 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.2.2 Automatic locks | 6-16 | 4.3.3.2.2 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.2.3 Lock release | 6-17 | 4.3.3.2.3 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.2.4 Supports for hinge-mounted equipment | 6-17 | 4.3.3.2.4 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.3.1 Preservation of external connections | 6-17 | 4.3.3.3.1 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.3.2 Breaking of external connections | 6-17 | 4.3.3.3.2 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.3.3.3 External connectors as part of supporting structure | 6-17 | 4.3.3.3.3 | 4-19 |
| 6.3.4.1.1 Complete visual and physical access | 6-17 | 4.3.4.1.1 | 4-20 |
| 6.3.4.1.2 Freedom from structural obstruction | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.2 | 4-20 |
| 6.3.4.1.3 Working space | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.3 | 4-20 |
| 6.3.4.1.4 Room to open covers | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.4 | 4-20 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|------|
| 6.3.4.1.5 Stacking or blocking equipment | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.5 | 4-20 |
| 6.3.4.1.6 Full extension or rotation | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.6 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.1.7 Working level | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.7 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.1.8 Visual access | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.8 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.1.9 Removal path | 6-18 | 4.3.4.1.9 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.2.1 Criticality of equipment | 6-18 | 4.3.4.2.1 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.2.2 Frequency of access | 6-19 | 4.3.4.2.2 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.2.3 Grouping to minimize movement | 6-19 | 4.3.4.2.3 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.2.4 Noninteraction with equipment maintained by others | 6-19 | 4.3.4.2.4 | 4-21 |
| 6.3.4.2.5 Difficulty of moving | 6-19 | 4.3.4.2.5 | 4-22 |
| 6.3.4.2.6 Noninteraction with equipment not in need of maintenance | 6-19 | 4.3.4.2.6 | 4-22 |
| 6.3.5.1.1 Equipment identification | 6-19 | 4.3.5.1.1 | 4-22 |
| 6.3.5.1.2 Hazard labels | 6-20 | 4.3.5.1.2 | 4-22 |
| 6.3.5.1.3 Weight labels | 6-20 | 4.3.5.1.3 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.1.4 Instruction labels | 6-20 | 4.3.5.1.4 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.1.5 Data labels | 6-20 | 4.3.5.1.5 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.2.1 Readability | 6-20 | 4.3.5.2.1 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.2.2 Preserving readability | 6-20 | 4.3.5.2.2 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.2.3 Consistent location | 6-20 | 4.3.5.2.3 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.2.4 Horizontal orientation | 6-20 | 4.3.5.2.4 | 4-23 |
| 6.3.5.3.1 Character height for viewing distance | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.1 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.2 Stroke width in normal illumination | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.2 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.3 Stroke width in dim illumination | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.3 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.4 Width to height ratios | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.4 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.5 Character spacing | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.5 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.6 Word spacing | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.6 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.7 Line spacing | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.7 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.8 Case of letters | 6-21 | 4.3.5.3.8 | 4-24 |
| 6.3.5.3.9 Text and background combinations | 6-22 | 4.3.5.3.9 | 4-25 |
| 6.3.5.4.1 Consistency | 6-22 | 4.3.5.4.1 | 4-25 |
| 6.3.5.4.2 Wording | 6-22 | 4.3.5.4.2 | 4-25 |
| 6.3.5.4.3 Instructions | 6-22 | 4.3.5.4.3 | 4-25 |
| 6.3.5.5.1 Number of color codes | 6-22 | 4.3.5.5.1 | 4-26 |
| 6.3.5.5.2 Recommended colors | 6-22 | 4.3.5.5.2 | 4-26 |
| 6.3.5.5.3 Arrows | 6-23 | 4.3.5.5.3 | 4-26 |
| 6.4.1.1 When an access opening is required | 6-23 | 4.4.1.1 | 4-27 |
| 6.4.1.2 Number of openings | 6-23 | 4.4.1.2 | 4-27 |
| 6.4.1.3 Prevention of injury or damage | 6-23 | 4.4.1.3 | 4-27 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------|------|
| 6.4.1.4 Uncovered openings | 6-23 | 4.4.1.4 | 4-27 |
| 6.4.1.5 Unacceptability of rivets | 6-23 | 4.4.1.5 | 4-27 |
| 6.4.2.1 Visual and physical access | 6-23 | 4.4.2.1 | 4-27 |
| 6.4.2.2 Visual access only | 6-24 | 4.4.2.2 | 4-28 |
| 6.4.2.3 Physical access only | 6-24 | 4.4.2.3 | 4-28 |
| 6.4.3.1 Accommodation | 6-24 | 4.4.3.1 | 4-28 |
| 6.4.3.2 Dimensions for one- or two-finger access | 6-24 | 4.4.3.2 | 4-28 |
| 6.4.3.3 Dimensions for one hand or arm access | 6-25 | 4.4.3.3 | 4-29 |
| 6.4.3.4 Dimensions for two-hand access | 6-26 | 4.4.3.4 | 4-29 |
| 6.4.4.1 Shape appropriate to task | 6-26 | 4.4.4.1 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.1 On accessible surfaces | 6-26 | 4.4.5.1 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.2 Near related displays, controls, and connectors | 6-27 | 4.4.5.2 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.3 Away from hazards | 6-27 | 4.4.5.3 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.4 Comfortable for maintainer | 6-27 | 4.4.5.4 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.5 Easy removal of components | 6-27 | 4.4.5.5 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.6 Conformance with related items | 6-27 | 4.4.5.6 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.7 Free of obstructions | 6-27 | 4.4.5.7 | 4-31 |
| 6.4.5.8 Impervious to environmental conditions | 6-27 | 4.4.5.8 | 4-32 |
| 6.4.6.1 Identification of opening | 6-27 | 4.4.6.1 | 4-32 |
| 6.4.6.2 Identification of accessible components and maintenance tasks | 6-27 | 4.4.6.2 | 4-32 |
| 6.4.6.3 Warning labels | 6-27 | 4.4.6.3 | 4-32 |
| 6.4.6.4 Insertion holes | 6-27 | 4.2.8.6 | 4-14 |
| 6.5.1.1 How to open | 6-28 | 4.5.1.4 | 4-33 |
| 6.5.1.2 Ease of opening | 6-28 | 4.5.1.9 | 4-33 |
| 6.5.1.3 Fastened-unfastened indication | 6-28 | 4.5.1.10 | 4-33 |
| 6.5.1.4 Handles or grasp areas | 6-29 | 4.5.1.11 | 4-35 |
| 6.5.1.5 Shift in balance of equipment | 6-29 | 4.5.1.13 | 4-35 |
| 6.5.1.6 Stops and retaining devices | 6-29 | 4.5.1.14 | 4-35 |
| 6.5.1.7 Ventilation holes | 6-29 | 4.5.1.15 | 4-36 |
| 6.5.1.8 Rounded edges | 6-29 | 4.5.1.16 | 4-36 |
| 6.5.1.9 Small removable covers | 6-29 | 4.5.1.17 | 4-36 |
| 6.5.2.1 Size of covers | 6-29 | 4.5.2.1 | 4-36 |
| 6.5.3.1 Appropriate to opening | 6-30 | 4.5.3.1 | 4-37 |
| 6.5.3.2 Proper orientation | 6-30 | 4.5.3.2 | 4-37 |
| 6.5.4.1 Accessible with equipment in installed position | 6-30 | 6.5.4.1 | 6-30 |
| 6.5.4.2 Noninterference of open cover with accessibility | 6-30 | 6.5.4.2 | 6-30 |
| 6.5.5.1 Safe operation | 6-30 | 4.5.4.1 | 4-37 |
| 6.5.5.2 Self-supporting | 6-30 | 4.5.4.2 | 4-37 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-----------|------|
| 6.5.5.3 Operable with one hand | 6-30 | 4.5.4.3 | 4-37 |
| 6.5.6.1 Safe operation | 6-31 | 4.5.5.1 | 4-37 |
| 6.5.6.2 Positive locking | 6-31 | 4.5.5.2 | 4-38 |
| 6.5.6.3 Nonjamming | 6-31 | 4.5.5.3 | 4-38 |
| 6.5.6.4 Easy hand operation | 6-31 | 4.5.5.4 | 4-38 |
| 6.5.7.1 Uncovered openings | 6-31 | 4.4.1.4 | 4-27 |
| 6.5.7.2 Preferred type of cover | 6-31 | 4.5.1.2 | 4-34 |
| 6.5.8.1 Fastener security | 6-32 | 4.6.1.1 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.2 Number and ease of opening | 6-32 | 4.6.1.2 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.3 Common fasteners | 6-32 | 4.6.1.3 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.4 Captive fasteners | 6-32 | 4.6.3.7 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.5 Quick-action fasteners | 6-32 | 4.6.1.16 | |
| 6.5.8.6 Self-alignment | 6-32 | 4.6.1.4 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.7 Operable by hand or common hand tools | 6-32 | 4.6.1.5 | 4-40 |
| 6.5.8.8 Opened-closed indication | 6-32 | 4.6.1.6 | 4-41 |
| 6.5.8.9 Hole size | 6-32 | 4.6.1.7 | 4-41 |
| 6.5.8.10 Covers as structural members | 6-32 | 4.6.1.17 | 4-42 |
| 6.5.8.11 Pin-and-hook fasteners | 6-33 | 4.6.3.5.4 | 4-47 |
| 6.5.9.1 Protection from hazards | 6-33 | 4.5.6.1 | 4-38 |
| 6.5.9.2 Interlock override switch | 6-33 | 4.5.6.2 | 4-39 |
| 6.5.9.3 Labeling covers with interlocks | 6-33 | 4.5.6.3 | 4-39 |
| 6.5.10.1 Method of opening | 6-34 | 4.5.7.1 | 4-39 |
| 6.5.10.2 Hazard labels | 6-34 | 4.5.7.2 | 4-39 |
| 6.5.10.3 Instructional labels | 6-34 | 4.5.7.3 | 4-39 |
| 6.6.1.1 Lift case, not equipment | 6-34 | 4.5.1.5 | 4-34 |
| 6.6.1.2 Ease of removal and replacement | 6-34 | 4.5.1.6 | 4-34 |
| 6.6.1.3 Accessibility | 6-34 | 4.5.1.3 | 4-34 |
| 6.6.1.4 Minimizing need for removal | 6-34 | 4.5.1.8 | 4-35 |
| 6.6.1.5 Accessibility upon opening or removal | 6-34 | 4.4.2 | 4-27 |
| 6.6.1.6 Handles or grips | 6-35 | 4.5.1.11 | 4-35 |
| 6.6.1.7 Rounded edges | 6-35 | 4.5.4.16 | 4-36 |
| 6.6.2.1 Precise movements not required | 6-35 | 4.5.2.1 | 4-36 |
| 6.6.2.2 Clearance between case and components | 6-35 | 4.5.2.3 | 4-37 |
| 6.6.3.1 Alignment aids | 6-35 | 4.5.1.18 | 4-36 |
| 6.6.3.2 Sealing material | 6-35 | 4.5.1.19 | 4-36 |
| 6.6.3.3 Stops and retainers | 6-35 | 4.5.4.2 | 4-37 |
| 6.6.3.4 Supports | 6-35 | 4.5.4.4 | 4-37 |
| 6.6.3.5 Fastened-unfastened indication | 6-35 | 4.6.1.6 | 4-41 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-----------|------|
| 6.6.4.1 Fastener security | 6-36 | 4.6.1.1 | 4-40 |
| 6.6.4.2 Number and ease of opening | 6-36 | 4.6.1.2 | 4-40 |
| 6.6.4.3 Common fasteners | 6-36 | 4.6.1.3 | 4-40 |
| 6.6.4.4 Captive fasteners | 6-36 | 4.6.3.7 | 4-50 |
| 6.6.4.5 Quick-action fasteners | 6-36 | 4.6.1.16 | 4-42 |
| 6.6.4.6 Self-alignment | 6-36 | 4.6.1.4 | 4-40 |
| 6.6.4.7 Operable by hand or common hand tools | 6-36 | 4.6.1.5 | 4-40 |
| 6.6.4.8 Opened-closed indication | 6-36 | 4.6.1.6 | 4-41 |
| 6.6.4.9 Hole size | 6-36 | 4.6.1.7 | 4-41 |
| 6.6.5.1 Protection from hazards | 6-37 | 4.5.6.1 | 4-38 |
| 6.6.5.2 Interlock override switch | 6-37 | 4.5.6.2 | 4-39 |
| 6.6.5.3 Labeling cases with interlocks | 6-37 | 4.5.6.3 | 4-39 |
| 6.6.6.1 Method of opening | 6-37 | 4.5.7.1 | 4-39 |
| 6.6.6.2 Hazard labels | 6-37 | 4.5.7.2 | 4-39 |
| 6.6.6.3 Instructional labels | 6-37 | 4.5.7.3 | 4-39 |
| 6.7.1.1 Fastener security | 6-38 | 4.6.1.1 | 4-40 |
| 6.7.1.2 Number and ease of opening | 6-38 | 4.6.1.2 | 4-40 |
| 6.7.1.3 Common fasteners | 6-38 | 4.6.1.3 | 4-40 |
| 6.7.1.4 Self-alignment | 6-38 | 4.6.1.4 | 4-40 |
| 6.7.1.5 Operable by hand or common hand tools | 6-38 | 4.6.1.5 | 4-40 |
| 6.7.1.6 Open-closed indication | 6-39 | 4.6.1.6 | 4-41 |
| 6.7.1.7 Hole size | 6-39 | 4.6.1.7 | 4-41 |
| 6.7.1.8 Fastener variety | 6-39 | 4.6.1.8 | 4-41 |
| 6.7.1.9 When different fasteners are required | 6-39 | 4.6.1.9 | 4-41 |
| 6.7.1.10 Different fasteners must be distinguishable | 6-39 | 4.6.1.10 | 4-41 |
| 6.7.1.11 Location of fasteners | 6-39 | 4.6.1.11 | 4-42 |
| 6.7.1.12 Strength of hand-operated fasteners | 6-40 | 4.6.1.12 | 4-42 |
| 6.7.1.13 Painted or coated fasteners | 6-40 | 4.6.1.13 | 4-42 |
| 6.7.1.14 Precise torque requirements | 6-40 | 4.6.1.14 | 4-42 |
| 6.7.1.15 Torqued fasteners | 6-40 | 4.6.1.15 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.2.1 Minimum that meets requirements | 6-40 | 4.6.2.1 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.2.2 Mounting | 6-40 | 4.6.2.2 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.2.3 Minimize by using hinges, catches, latches, and quick fastening and releasing devices | 6-40 | 4.6.2.3 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.2.4 Minimize by using tongue-and-slot design | 6-40 | 4.6.2.4 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.3.1 Nuts and bolts | 6-40 | 4.6.3.1 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.3.1.1 Bolt length | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.1 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.3.1.2 Bolt threads | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.2 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.3.1.3 Turns to tighten | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.3 | 4-43 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|------|
| 6.7.3.1.4 Hexagonal nuts | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.4 | 4-43 |
| 6.7.3.1.5 Wing and knurled nuts | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.5 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.1.6 Left-hand threads | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.6 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.1.7 Lock washers | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.7 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.1.8 Removal and replacement with one hand or tool | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.8 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.1.9 Bolt mounting | 6-41 | 4.6.3.1.9 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.1 Number of turns | 6-41 | 4.6.3.2.1 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.2 Slot depth | 6-41 | 4.6.3.2.2 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.3 "Straight-in" screwdriver orientation | 6-41 | 4.6.3.2.3 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.4 Blind operation | 6-42 | 4.6.3.2.4 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.5 Screws for pressurized enclosures | 6-42 | 4.6.3.2.5 | 4-44 |
| 6.7.3.2.6 Countersunk screws | 6-42 | 4.6.3.2.6 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.2.7 Screws for thin panels | 6-42 | 4.6.3.2.7 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.2.8 Self-tapping screws | 6-42 | 4.6.3.2.8 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.3.1 Same heads for screws and bolts | 6-42 | 4.6.3.3.1 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.3.2 Combination-head bolts and screws | 6-42 | 4.6.3.3.2 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.3.3 Straight-slot and cross-recess type internal fasteners | 6-42 | 4.6.3.3.3 | 4-45 |
| 6.7.3.3.4 Internal-wrenching fasteners-where to use | 6-43 | 4.6.3.3.4 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.3.6 High-torque fasteners | 6-43 | 4.6.3.3.5 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.3.7 Low-torque fasteners | 6-43 | 4.6.3.3.6 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.4.1 Positive catch | 6-43 | 4.6.3.4.1 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.4.2 Visual indication | 6-43 | 4.6.3.4.2 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.4.3 Spring-loading of catches | 6-43 | 4.6.3.4.3 | 4-46 |
| 6.7.3.4.4 Nonhazardous | 6-43 | 4.6.3.4.4 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.4.5 Associated handles | 6-43 | 4.6.3.4.5 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.4.6 Preventing inadvertent operation | 6-44 | 4.6.3.4.6 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.5.1 Integral fasteners not allowed | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.1 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.5.2 Cotter pins and keys | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.2 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.5.3 Retainer rings | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.3 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.5.4 Pin-and-hook fasteners | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.4 | 4-47 |
| 6.7.3.5.5 Safety wire | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.5 | 4-48 |
| 6.7.3.5.6 Rivets | 6-44 | 4.6.3.5.6 | 4-48 |
| 6.7.3.5.7 Retainer chains | 6-45 | 4.6.3.5.7 | 4-48 |
| 6.7.3.5.8 Washers | 6-45 | 4.6.3.5.8 | 4-49 |
| 6.7.3.6.1 Frequent access | 6-46 | 4.6.3.6.1 | 4-49 |
| 6.7.3.6.2 Tools not required | 6-46 | 4.6.3.6.2 | 4-49 |
| 6.7.3.6.3 Single motion | 6-46 | 4.6.3.6.3 | 4-49 |
| 6.7.3.6.4 Visual indication of state | 6-46 | 4.6.3.6.4 | 4-49 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|------|
| 6.7.3.6.5 Minimum turns | 6-46 | 4.6.3.6.5 | 4-49 |
| 6.7.3.7.1 When to use | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.1 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.3.7.2 Operation and replacement | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.2 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.3.7.3 "Quarter-turn" fasteners | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.3 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.3.7.4 Access covers | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.4 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.3.7.5 Small removable pins, caps, and covers | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.5 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.3.7.6 Mounting bolts | 6-46 | 4.6.3.7.6 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.4.1 Mounting bolts | 6-47 | 4.6.4.1 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.4.2 Fasteners requiring torquing | 6-47 | 4.6.4.2 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.4.3 Durability of marking | 6-47 | 4.6.4.3 | 4-50 |
| 6.7.4.4 Consistent coding | 6-47 | 4.6.4.4 | 4-50 |
| 6.8.1.1 Fast, easy operation | 6-47 | 4.7.1.3 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.1.2 Safety | 6-47 | 4.7.1.4 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.1.3 Hand or common tool operation | 6-47 | 4.7.1.5 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.1.4 Compatibility | 6-47 | 4.7.1.6 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.1.5 Protection of connectors | 6-48 | 4.7.1.7 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.1.6 Captive covers | 6-48 | 4.7.1.8 | 4-51 |
| 6.8.2.1.1 Distinctive types | 6-48 | 4.7.2.1.1 | 4-52 |
| 6.8.2.1.2 Preventing mismatching | 6-48 | 4.7.2.1.2 | 4-52 |
| 6.8.2.2.1 When to use | 6-48 | 4.7.2.2.1 | 4-52 |
| 6.8.2.2.2 Preventing damage | 6-48 | 4.7.2.2.2 | 4-52 |
| 6.8.2.3.1 Ease of operation | 6-48 | 4.7.2.3.1 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.2.4.1 When to use | 6-49 | 4.7.2.4.1 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.2.4.2 Self-locking | 6-49 | 4.7.2.4.2 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.1 Visual and physical access | 6-49 | 4.7.3.1 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.2 Unobstructed access | 6-49 | 4.7.3.2 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.3 Relative accessibility | 6-49 | 4.7.3.3 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.4 Full access | 6-49 | 4.7.3.4 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.5 Protected from dislodging and damage | 6-49 | 4.7.3.5 | 4-53 |
| 6.8.3.6 Minimum spacing | 6-49 | 4.7.3.7 | 4-54 |
| 6.8.3.7 Space for wrench | 6-50 | 4.7.3.8 | 4-54 |
| 6.8.4.1 Preventing misalignment | 6-50 | 4.7.4.1 | 4-54 |
| 6.8.4.2 Alignment before contact | 6-50 | 4.7.4.2 | 4-54 |
| 6.8.4.3 Aligning the alignment devices | 6-50 | 4.7.4.3 | 4-54 |
| 6.8.4.4 Alignment coding | 6-50 | 4.7.4.4 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.4.5 Alignment of drawer connectors | 6-50 | 4.7.4.5 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.1 Fast, easy connection | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.1 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.2 Prevention of insertion errors | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.2 | 4-55 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------|------|
| 6.8.5.1.3 Alignment before contact | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.3 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.4 Few plugs, many contacts | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.4 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.5 "Hot" leads | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.5 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.6 "Cold" plugs | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.6 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.7 Electrical charges | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.7 | 4-55 |
| 6.8.5.1.8 Self-locking or latching | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.8 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.9 Insertion force | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.9 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.10 Durability | 6-51 | 4.7.5.1.10 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.11 Nonshorting contacts | 6-52 | 4.7.5.1.11 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.12 Pin identification | 6-52 | 4.7.5.1.12 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.13 Test points | 6-52 | 4.7.5.1.13 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.14 Disassembly by hand or using common hand tools | 6-52 | 4.7.5.1.14 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.1.15 Drawer module connectors | 6-52 | 4.7.5.1.15 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.2.1 Length of leads | 6-52 | 4.8.1.2.5 | 4-62 |
| 6.8.5.2.2 Spacing of leads | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.1 | 4-56 |
| 6.8.5.2.3 Cable "fan out" | 6-53 | 4.8.1.1.5 | 4-60 |
| 6.8.5.2.4 Extra wire length | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.2 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.5 Clamping insulation | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.3 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.6 Compatibility of lugs with terminals | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.4 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.7 U-lugs | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.5 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.8 Soldered connections | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.6 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.9 Spacing of terminals | 6-53 | 4.7.5.2.7 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.10 Length of terminals | 6-54 | 4.7.5.2.8 | 4-57 |
| 6.8.5.2.11 Soldered wires | 6-54 | 4.7.5.2.9 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.5.2.12 Wire wrapping or pig tailing | 6-54 | 4.7.5.2.10 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.6.1 Connectors for rigid lines | 6-54 | 4.8.2.2.2 | 4-72 |
| 6.8.6.2 Draining and filling | 6-54 | 4.8.2.1.1.2 | 4-72 |
| 6.8.6.3 Leakage tests | 6-54 | 4.8.2.1.6 | 4-71 |
| 6.8.6.4 Control of leakage and spillage | 6-54 | 4.8.2.1.7 | 4-71 |
| 6.8.6.5 Exposure to noise and vibration | 6-54 | 4.8.2.1.14 | 4-72 |
| 6.8.7.1 Replaceable, renewable gaskets and seals | 6-54 | 4.8.2.4.1 | 4-73 |
| 6.8.7.2 Repair and replacement of gaskets and seals | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.2 | 4-73 |
| 6.8.7.3 Identifiability of gaskets and seals | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.3 | 4-74 |
| 6.8.7.4 Life expectancy of gaskets and seals | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.4 | 4-74 |
| 6.8.7.5 Prevent entrance of air | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.5 | 4-74 |
| 6.8.7.6 Tightening to offset shrinkage | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.6 | 4-74 |
| 6.8.7.7 Visibility | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.7 | 4-74 |
| 6.8.7.8 Nonprotrusion | 6-55 | 4.8.2.4.8 | 4-74 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|------|
| 6.8.8.1 Matching connectors or plugs and receptacles | 6-55 | 4.7.6.1 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.2 Noninterchangeable connectors | 6-55 | 4.7.6.2 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.3 Matching wires to terminal or pins | 6-56 | 4.7.6.3 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.4 Identification of terminals on terminal strips or blocks | 6-56 | 4.7.6.4 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.5 Visibility of codes and labels | 6-56 | 4.9.5.4 | 4-88 |
| 6.8.8.6 Location of labels and codes - connectors | 6-56 | 4.7.6.5 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.7 Location of labels and codes - receptacles | 6-56 | 4.7.6.6 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.8 Consistency of labels and codes | 6-56 | 4.7.6.7 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.9 Warnings and cautions | 6-56 | 4.7.6.8 | 4-58 |
| 6.8.8.10 Marking electrical connections | 6-56 | 4.7.6.9 | 4-59 |
| 6.8.8.11 Alignment coding | 6-56 | 4.7.4.4 | 4-55 |
| 6.9.1.1.1 Selection | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.1 | 4-59 |
| 6.9.1.1.2 Insulation | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.2 | 4-59 |
| 6.9.1.1.3 Minimization | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.3 | 4-59 |
| 6.9.1.1.4 Quick-acting connections | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.4 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.5 Cable "fan out" | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.5 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.6 Preformed cables | 6-57 | 4.8.1.1.6 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.7 Harnesses | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.7 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.8 Protection | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.8 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.9 Exposed cables | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.9 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.10 Special purpose cables | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.10 | 4-60 |
| 6.9.1.1.11 Insect protection | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.11 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.1.12 Fluid protection | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.12 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.1.13 Storage space | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.13 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.1.14 Use of grommets | 6-58 | 4.8.1.1.14 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.2.1 Length of cables | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.1 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.2.2 Extra cable | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.2 | 4-61 |
| 6.9.1.2.3 Accessibility | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.3 | 4-62 |
| 6.9.1.2.4 Cable length and connectors | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.4 | 4-62 |
| 6.9.1.2.5 Lead lengths | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.5 | 4-62 |
| 6.9.1.2.6 Slack | 6-59 | 4.8.1.2.6 | 4-63 |
| 6.9.1.3.1 Routing considerations | 6-60 | 4.8.1.3.1 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.2 Combining lines | 6-60 | 4.8.1.3.2 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.3 Segregate conductors | 6-60 | 4.8.1.3.3 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.4 Routing over pipes | 6-60 | 4.8.1.3.4 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.5 Lightly insulated wires | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.5 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.6 Protection | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.6 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.7 Visual and physical access | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.7 | 4-64 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|------|
| 6.9.1.3.8 Unobstructed access | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.8 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.9 Replacement | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.9 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.10 Areas to avoid | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.10 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.11 Ease of maintenance | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.11 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.12 Nonobstruction | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.12 | 4-64 |
| 6.9.1.3.13 Remote switches | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.13 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.3.14 Cables within racks | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.14 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.3.15 Shortest route | 6-61 | 4.8.1.3.15 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.4.1 No weight-bearing | 6-61 | 4.8.1.4.1 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.4.2 Support | 6-61 | 4.8.1.4.2 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.4.3 Orientation | 6-62 | 4.8.1.4.3 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.4.4 No flexing | 6-62 | 4.8.1.4.4 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.4.5 Signal checks | 6-62 | 4.8.1.4.5 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.5.1 Snug fit | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.1 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.5.2 Spacing | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.2 | 4-65 |
| 6.9.1.5.3 Special clamps | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.3 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.5.4 Placement | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.4 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.5.5 Unsupported cable | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.5 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.5.6 Visibility of clamps | 6-62 | 4.8.1.5.6 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.5.7 Mechanically-mounted clamps | 6-63 | 4.8.1.5.7 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.5.8 Nonconductive | 6-63 | 4.8.1.5.8 | 4-66 |
| 6.9.1.6.1 Easy access | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.1 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.2 Multiple related functions | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.2 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.3 Support equipment | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.3 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.4 Noninterference | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.4 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.5 Storage provisions | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.5 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.6 Handling devices for cable | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.6 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.7 Automatic rewind | 6-63 | 4.8.1.6.7 | 4-67 |
| 6.9.1.6.8 Mobile support | 6-64 | 4.8.1.6.8 | 4-68 |
| 6.9.1.7.1 Extension cables | 6-64 | 4.8.1.7.1 | 4-68 |
| 6.9.1.7.2 Connectors on mockup cables | 6-64 | 4.8.1.7.2 | 4-68 |
| 6.9.1.7.3 Coverings | 6-64 | 4.8.1.7.3 | 4-68 |
| 6.9.1.7.4 Checking signal flow | 6-64 | 4.8.1.7.4 | 4-68 |
| 6.9.1.8.1 Coding wire | 6-64 | 4.8.1.8.1 | 4-69 |
| 6.9.1.8.2 Identification | 6-64 | 4.8.1.8.2 | 4-69 |
| 6.9.1.8.3 Identification of terminals on terminal strips or blocks | 6-65 | 4.8.1.8.3 | 4-69 |
| 6.9.1.8.4 Methods of color coding | 6-65 | 4.8.1.8.4 | 4-70 |
| 6.9.1.8.5 Cables within a sheath | 6-65 | 4.8.1.8.5 | 4-70 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|------|
| 6.9.1.8.6 Coding for orientation | 6-65 | 4.8.1.8.6 | 4-70 |
| 6.9.2.1.1 Use of flexible tubing | 6-66 | 4.8.2.1.2 | 4-71 |
| 6.9.2.1.2 Use of flexible hose | 6-66 | 4.8.2.1.3 | 4-71 |
| 6.9.2.1.3 Visibility | 6-66 | 4.8.2.4.7 | 4-74 |
| 6.9.2.1.4 Nonprotrusion | 6-66 | 4.8.2.4.8 | 4-74 |
| 6.9.2.1.5 Quick-action connectors | 6-67 | 4.7.2.4 | 4-53 |
| 6.9.2.1.6 Preventing leakage | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.5 | 4-71 |
| 6.9.2.1.7 Standardized fittings | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.8 | 4-71 |
| 6.9.2.1.8 Avoiding spraying fluids | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.9 | 4-71 |
| 6.9.2.1.9 High-pressure lines | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.10 | 4-72 |
| 6.9.2.1.10 Cutoff valves | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.11 | 4-72 |
| 6.9.2.1.11 Avoiding drainage problems | 6-67 | 4.8.2.1.13 | 4-72 |
| 6.9.2.2.1 Accessibility | 6-67 | 4.8.2.2.1 | 4-72 |
| 6.9.2.2.2 Disconnecting | 6-68 | 4.8.2.2.2 | 4-72 |
| 6.9.2.2.3 Areas to avoid | 6-68 | 4.8.2.2.3 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.2.4 Fuel lines | 6-68 | 4.8.2.2.4 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.2.5 Heat resistant liners | 6-68 | 4.8.2.2.5 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.2.6 Avoiding line kinking | 6-68 | 4.8.2.2.6 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.3.1 External service supports | 6-68 | 4.8.2.3.1 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.3.2 Spring clamps | 6-68 | 4.8.2.3.2 | 4-73 |
| 6.9.2.4.1 Fluid conductor coding | 6-68 | 4.8.2.5.1 | 4-75 |
| 6.9.2.4.2 Valve color coding | 6-69 | 4.8.2.5.2 | 4-76 |
| 6.9.2.4.3 Hydraulic and pneumatic line coding | 6-70 | 4.8.2.5.3 | 4-77 |
| 6.9.2.4.4 Label contents | 6-70 | 4.8.2.5.4 | 4-78 |
| 6.9.2.4.5 Valve position labeling | 6-70 | 4.8.2.5.5 | 4-78 |
| 6.10.1.1 Accessibility | 6-71 | 4.9.1.1 | 4-79 |
| 6.10.1.2 Minimize tool requirements | 6-71 | 4.9.1.2 | 4-79 |
| 6.10.1.3 Minimize maintainer movement | 6-71 | 4.9.1.3 | 4-79 |
| 6.10.1.4 Organized by maintenance specialty | 6-71 | 4.9.1.4 | 4-79 |
| 6.10.2.1.1 Modularization | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.1 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.2 Single function | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.2 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.3 Physical and functional interchangeability | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.3 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.4 Distinguishability of noninterchangeable modules | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.4 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.5 Unreliable components | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.5 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.6 Maintenance in installed location | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.6 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.1.7 Testing | 6-72 | 4.9.2.1.7 | 4-80 |
| 6.10.2.2.1 Modularization method | 6-72 | 4.9.2.2.1 | 4-81 |
| 6.10.2.2.2 Logical flow packaging | 6-73 | 4.9.2.2.2 | 4-81 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|------|
| 6.10.2.2.3 Circuit packaging | 6-73 | 4.9.2.2.3 | 4-81 |
| 6.10.2.2.4 Component packaging | 6-73 | 4.9.2.2.4 | 4-82 |
| 6.10.2.2.5 Printed circuit boards | 6-73 | 4.9.2.2.5 | 4-82 |
| 6.10.3.1.1 No interference from other parts | 6-74 | 4.9.1.1.1 | 4-82 |
| 6.10.3.1.2 No stacking of parts | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.2 | 4-82 |
| 6.10.3.1.3 Consistent orientation | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.3 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.4 Spacing of parts | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.4 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.5 Separation of parts and wiring on printed circuit boards | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.5 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.6 Spacing of terminals | 6-74 | 4.7.5.2.7 | 4-57 |
| 6.10.3.1.7 Frequently inspected component parts | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.6 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.8 High failure-rate parts | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.7 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.9 Indicator lights | 6-74 | 4.9.3.1.8 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.10 Shutoff switches | 6-75 | 4.9.3.1.9 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.1.11 Visual and physical accessibility | 6-75 | 4.9.3.1.10 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.2.1 Grouping maintenance displays | 6-75 | 4.9.3.2.1 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.2.2 Separating maintenance and operational displays | 6-75 | 4.9.3.2.2 | 4-84 |
| 6.10.3.3.1 Avoidance of damage to parts and wiring | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.1 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.2 Avoidance of damage from handling | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.2 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.3 Avoidance of damage from the environment | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.3 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.4 Protecting maintainers from heat and electrical shock | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.4 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.5 Bleeder networks | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.5 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.6 Separating internal controls from hazardous voltages | 6-75 | 4.9.3.3.6 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.3.3.7 High current switching devices | 6-76 | 4.9.3.3.7 | 4-85 |
| 6.10.4.1 Foldout mounting | 6-76 | 4.9.4.1 | 4-86 |
| 6.10.4.2 Prevention of damage with foldout mounting | 6-76 | 4.9.4.2 | 4-86 |
| 6.10.4.3 Support for hinged mounting | 6-76 | 4.9.4.3 | 4-86 |
| 6.10.4.4 Rests and stands | 6-76 | 4.9.4.4 | 4-86 |
| 6.10.4.5 Straps and brackets - characteristics | 6-76 | 4.9.4.5 | 4-86 |
| 6.10.4.6 Shock mounts | 6-76 | 4.9.4.6 | 4-87 |
| 6.10.4.7 Preventing mounting errors by physical design | 6-77 | 4.9.4.7 | 4-87 |
| 6.10.4.8 Mounting and orientation of similar items | 6-77 | 4.9.4.8 | 4-87 |
| 6.10.4.9 Accessibility | 6-77 | 4.9.4.9 | 4-87 |
| 6.10.4.10 Controls | 6-77 | 4.9.4.10 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.4.11 Common hand tools | 6-77 | 4.9.4.11 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.4.12 Front access | 6-77 | 4.9.4.12 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.4.13 Orientation of modules within cases | 6-77 | 4.9.4.13 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.4.14 "Plug-in" connectors | 6-77 | 4.9.4.14 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.5.1 When to use labels and markings | 6-78 | 4.9.5.1 | 4-88 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------|------|
| 6.10.5.2 Location of labels and markings - consistency | 6-78 | 4.9.5.2 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.5.3 Location of labels and markings - eye level | 6-78 | 4.9.5.3 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.5.4 Visibility | 6-78 | 4.9.5.4 | 4-88 |
| 6.10.5.5 Orientation | 6-78 | 4.9.5.5 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.6 Electrical parts | 6-78 | 4.9.5.6 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.7 Parts requiring identification | 6-78 | 4.9.5.7 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.8 Identification of terminals on terminal strips or blocks | 6-79 | 4.9.5.8 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.9 Identification of terminals on parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.9 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.10 Identification of parts accessible from both sides | 6-79 | 4.9.5.10 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.11 Adequacy of markings | 6-79 | 4.9.5.11 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.12 Durability of markings | 6-79 | 4.9.5.12 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.13 Marking stacked parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.13 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.14 Marking enclosed parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.14 | 4-89 |
| 6.10.5.15 Designation of parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.15 | 4-90 |
| 6.10.5.16 Hazard warnings | 6-79 | 4.9.5.16 | 4-90 |
| 6.10.5.17 Labeling symmetric parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.17 | 4-90 |
| 6.10.5.18 Insertion holes | 6-79 | 4.2.8.6 | 4-14 |
| 6.10.5.19 Auxiliary information for parts | 6-79 | 4.9.5.18 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.1 Controls and feedback | 6-80 | 4.10.1 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.2 Simultaneous access to controls and displays | 6-80 | 4.10.2 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.3 Location of adjustment controls | 6-80 | 4.10.3 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.4 Differentiating maintenance controls from operational controls | 6-80 | 4.10.4 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.5 Independence of adjustment controls | 6-80 | 4.10.5 | 4-90 |
| 6.11.6 Sequential adjustments | 6-80 | 4.10.6 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.7 Functionally related adjustments | 6-80 | 4.10.7 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.8 Direct readings | 6-80 | 4.10.8 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.9 Knob adjustments preferred to screwdriver adjustments | 6-80 | 4.10.9 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.10 Screwdriver adjustments - preventing slipping | 6-81 | 4.10.10 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.11 Screwdriver guides | 6-81 | 4.10.11 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.12 Use of mirrors or flashlights | 6-81 | 4.10.12 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.13 Remote adjustments | 6-81 | 4.10.13 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.14 Degree of adjustment | 6-81 | 4.10.14 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.15 Mechanical stops | 6-81 | 4.10.15 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.17 Preventing inadvertent adjustment | 6-81 | 4.10.16 | 4-91 |
| 6.11.18 Critical or sensitive adjustments | 6-81 | 4.10.17 | 4-92 |
| 6.11.19 Hand or arm support | 6-81 | 4.10.18 | 4-92 |
| 6.11.20 Avoidance of hazards | 6-81 | 4.10.19 | 4-92 |
| 6.12.1.1 When to use | 6-82 | 7.1.1.1 | 7-1 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------|------|
| 6.12.1.2 Visual versus auditory alarm | 6-82 | 7.1.1.11,12 | 7-2 |
| 6.12.1.3 Special alarm | 6-82 | 7.1.1.10 | 7-2 |
| 6.12.1.4 Loss of redundancy | 6-82 | 7.1.1.6 | 7-1 |
| 6.12.2.1 Overload indicators | 6-82 | 6.3.5.1 | 6-80 |
| 6.12.2.2 Out of range indicators | 6-82 | 6.3.5.2 | 6-80 |
| 6.12.2.3 Power failure indicators | 6-82 | 6.3.5.3 | 6-80 |
| 6.12.2.4 Open circuit indicators | 6-82 | 6.3.5.4 | 6-80 |
| 6.12.2.5 Power-on indicator | 6-82 | 6.3.5.5 | 6-80 |
| 6.12.3.1 Automated aids | 6-82 | 3.8.5 | 3-16 |
| 6.12.3.2 Automatic self-checking components | 6-82 | 3.8.6 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.3 On-demand system check | 6-83 | 3.8.7 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.4 Fault detection | 6-83 | 3.8.11 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.5 Identification | 6-83 | 3.8.14 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.6 Sensor verification | 6-83 | 3.8.8 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.7 Equipment verification | 6-83 | 3.8.10 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.8 Fault detection without disassembly | 6-83 | 3.8.10 | 3-17 |
| 6.12.3.9 Portable diagnostic tools | 6-83 | 3.8.13 | 3-17 |
| 6.13.1.1 Selection of fuses and circuit breakers | 6-83 | 4.11.1.1 | 4-92 |
| 6.13.1.2 Location of fuses and circuit breakers | 6-84 | 4.11.1.2 | 4-93 |
| 6.13.1.3 Verification of an open circuit | 6-84 | 4.11.1.3 | 4-93 |
| 6.13.1.4 Individual fused units | 6-84 | 4.11.1.4 | 4-93 |
| 6.13.2.1 Using fuses | 6-84 | 4.11.2.1 | 4-93 |
| 6.13.2.2 Worker safety | 6-84 | 4.11.2.2 | 4-93 |
| 6.13.2.3 Safeguarding the circuit | 6-84 | 4.11.2.3 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.2.4 Quick-disconnect fuse holders | 6-84 | 4.11.2.4 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.2.5 No special tools for fuse replacement | 6-85 | 4.11.2.5 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.2.6 No other components to be removed | 6-85 | 4.11.2.6 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.2.7 Spare fuse provisions | 6-85 | 4.11.2.7 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.2.8 Anticorrosion precautions | 6-85 | 4.11.2.8 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.3.1 Push-pull circuit breaker specifications | 6-85 | 4.11.3.1 | 4-94 |
| 6.13.3.2 Power switches | 6-85 | 4.11.3.2 | 4-95 |
| 6.13.4.1 Toggle bat specifications | 6-86 | 4.11.4.1 | 4-96 |
| 6.13.4.2 Legend switch specifications | 6-88 | 4.11.4.2 | 4-97 |
| 6.13.5.1 Fuses and circuit breakers | 6-88 | 4.11.5.1 | 4-98 |
| 6.13.5.2 Fuse ratings | 6-88 | 4.11.5.2 | 4-98 |
| 6.13.5.3 Circuits | 6-89 | 4.11.5.3 | 4-98 |
| 6.14.1.1 Location | 6-89 | 4.12.1.1 | 4-98 |
| 6.14.1.2 Individual adjustment controls | 6-89 | 4.12.1.2 | 4-98 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|-------|
| 6.14.2.1 Test points for units of equipment | 6-89 | 4.12.2.1 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.2 Arranging test points | 6-89 | 4.12.2.2 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.3 Tracing signals | 6-89 | 4.12.2.3 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.4 Test and service point accessibility | 6-89 | 4.12.2.4 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.5 Proximity to associated controls and displays | 6-89 | 4.12.2.5 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.6 Test and service point location | 6-89 | 4.12.2.6 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.7 Minimizing testing and servicing | 6-90 | 4.12.2.7 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.8 Minimizing test and service points | 6-90 | 4.12.2.8 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.9 Avoid isolated test or service points | 6-90 | 4.12.2.9 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.10 Compatibility of test and service points | 6-90 | 4.12.2.10 | 4-99 |
| 6.14.2.11 Distinctive connections | 6-90 | 4.12.2.11 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.2.12 Avoid separate accessories | 6-90 | 4.12.2.12 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.2.13 Terminal strips | 6-90 | 4.12.2.13 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.1 Drain provisions | 6-90 | 4.12.3.1 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.2 Minimization | 6-90 | 4.12.3.2 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.3 Valves and petcocks versus drain plugs | 6-91 | 4.12.3.3 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.4 Drain plugs | 6-91 | 4.12.3.4 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.5 Labels | 6-91 | 4.12.3.5 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.6 Drain cock motions | 6-91 | 4.12.3.6 | 4-100 |
| 6.14.3.7 Instruction labels | 6-91 | 4.12.3.7 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.3.8 Accessibility | 6-91 | 4.12.3.8 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.4.1 Test and service point accessibility | 6-91 | 4.12.4.1 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.4.2 Test probe guides | 6-91 | 4.12.4.2 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.4.3 Test accesses | 6-91 | 4.12.4.3 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.4.4 Test points in plugs | 6-92 | 4.12.4.4 | 4-101 |
| 6.14.5.1 Test point shielding | 6-92 | 4.12.5.1 | 4-102 |
| 6.14.5.2 Minimum clearance | 6-92 | 4.12.5.2 | 4-102 |
| 6.14.5.3 Recessed test and service points | 6-92 | 4.12.5.3 | 4-102 |
| 6.14.5.4 High pressure test indicators | 6-92 | 4.12.5.4 | 4-102 |
| 6.14.5.5 Ground points | 6-92 | 4.12.5.5 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.5.6 Shields around lubrication points | 6-92 | 4.12.5.6 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.1 Label location | 6-93 | 4.12.6.1 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.2 Distinguishable marking | 6-93 | 4.12.6.2 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.3 Distinguishing test and service points | 6-93 | 4.12.6.3 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.4 Hazardous points | 6-93 | 4.12.6.4 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.5 Identification of test points | 6-93 | 4.12.6.5 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.6 Luminescent markings | 6-93 | 4.12.6.6 | 4-103 |
| 6.14.6.7 Tolerance limits | 6-93 | 4.12.6.7 | 4-103 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|-------|
| 6.14.6.8 Internal test and service points | 6-93 | 4.12.6.8 | 4-103 |
| 6.15.1.1.1 Test equipment treatment | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.1 | 4-104 |
| 6.15.1.1.2 Accuracy of test equipment | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.2 | 4-104 |
| 6.15.1.1.3 Conversion tables | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.3 | 4-104 |
| 6.15.1.1.4 Selector switches | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.4 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.1.5 Maintenance instructions | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.5 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.1.6 Storing instructions | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.6 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.1.7 Labeling | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.7 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.1.8 Label contents | 6-94 | 4.13.1.1.8 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.2.1 Shielding hazardous parts | 6-94 | 4.13.1.2.1 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.2.5 Minimizing hazards | 6-95 | 4.12.1.2.2 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.2.6 Internal controls | 6-95 | 4.13.1.2.3 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.2.7 Safeguarding high voltages | 6-95 | 4.13.1.2.4 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.2.8 Warning labels | 6-95 | 4.13.1.2.5 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.3.1 Accessibility | 6-95 | 4.13.1.3.1 | 4-105 |
| 6.15.1.3.2 Minimizing test equipment | 6-95 | 4.13.1.3.2 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.3.3 Ease of use | 6-95 | 4.13.1.3.3 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.3.4 Reducing the number of steps | 6-95 | 4.13.1.3.4 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.3.5 Individual operation | 6-95 | 4.13.1.3.5 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.4.1 Calibration check | 6-95 | 4.13.1.4.1 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.4.2 Warm-up indicators | 6-96 | 4.13.1.4.2 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.4.3 Automatic shutoff switches | 6-96 | 4.13.1.4.3 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.1.4.4 Misalignment | 6-96 | 4.13.1.4.4 | 4-106 |
| 6.15.2.1.1 Combining test points | 6-96 | 4.13.2.1.1 | 4-107 |
| 6.15.2.1.2 Efficiency | 6-96 | 4.13.2.1.2 | 4-107 |
| 6.15.2.1.3 Easy to use | 6-97 | 4.13.2.1.3 | 4-107 |
| 6.15.2.1.4 In-tolerance | 6-97 | 4.13.2.1.4 | 4-107 |
| 6.15.2.2.1 Combining test points | 6-97 | 4.13.2.2.1 | 4-107 |
| 6.15.2.2.2 Test capabilities | 6-97 | 4.13.2.2.2 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.3.1 When to use | 6-97 | 4.13.2.3.1 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.3.2 Single connection | 6-97 | 4.13.2.3.2 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.3.3 Internal storage | 6-97 | 4.13.2.3.3 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.3.4 Operating instructions | 6-97 | 4.13.2.3.4 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.3.5 Calibration records | 6-97 | 4.13.2.3.5 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.4.2 Test point connections | 6-98 | 4.13.2.4.2 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.4.3 Block diagram | 6-98 | 4.13.2.4.3 | 4-108 |
| 6.15.2.4.4 Overlays | 6-98 | 4.13.2.4.4 | 4-109 |
| 6.15.2.4.5 Tolerance limits for signals | 6-98 | 4.13.2.4.5 | 4-109 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|-------|
| 6.15.5.1 Identification of out-of-tolerance signals | 6-99 | 4.13.3.1 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.1 Accessibility | 6-99 | 4.13.4.1,2 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.2 Support for test equipment | 6-99 | 4.13.4.3 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.3 Extension cables | 6-99 | 4.8.1.7.1 | F |
| 6.15.6.4 Connectors on mockup cables | 6-99 | 4.8.1.7.2 | 4-68 |
| 6.15.6.5 Coverings | 6-99 | 4.8.1.7.3 | 4-68 |
| 6.15.6.6 Checking signal flow | 6-99 | 4.8.1.7.4 | 4-68 |
| 6.15.6.7 Test leads | 6-100 | 4.13.4.4 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.8 Signal values | 6-100 | 4.13.4.5 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.9 Covers | 6-100 | 4.13.5.6 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.6.10 Easy access | 6-100 | 4.13.4.7 | 4-110 |
| 6.15.7.1 Available storage | 6-100 | 4.13.5.1 | 4-111 |
| 6.15.7.2 Securing accessories | 6-100 | 4.13.5.2 | 4-111 |
| 6.15.7.3 Labeling | 6-100 | 4.13.5.3 | 4-111 |
| 6.15.7.4 Handles | 6-100 | 4.13.5.4 | 4-111 |
| 6.16.1.1 Minimize maintenance tools | 6-100 | 4.14.1.1 | 4-111 |
| 6.16.1.2 Use common tools | 6-101 | 4.14.1.2 | 4-111 |
| 6.16.1.3 Minimize variety and sizes of tools required | 6-101 | 4.14.1.3 | 4-111 |
| 6.16.1.4 Special tools | 6-101 | 4.14.1.4 | 4-111 |
| 6.16.2.1 Gripping surfaces | 6-101 | 4.14.2.2 | 4-112 |
| 6.16.2.2 Providing thongs | 6-101 | 4.14.2.3 | 4-112 |
| 6.16.2.3 Insulation of handles | 6-101 | 4.14.2.4 | 4-112 |
| 6.16.3.1 Reasons for requiring special tools | 6-101 | 4.14.3.1 | 4-112 |
| 6.16.3.3 Availability of special tools | 6-101 | 4.14.3.2 | 4-112 |
| 6.16.3.4 Attach to equipment | 6-101 | 4.14.3.3 | 4-112 |
| Chapter 7 | | | |
| 7.1.1.1 Relationship | 7-1 | 6.3.1.1 | 6-73 |
| 7.1.1.2 No obstruction | 7-1 | 6.3.1.2 | 6-73 |
| 7.1.1.3 Complexity and precision | 7-1 | 6.3.1.3 | 6-73 |
| 7.1.1.4 Feedback | 7-1 | 6.3.1.5 | 6-73 |
| 7.1.1.5 Time lag | 7-1 | 6.3.1.6 | 6-73 |
| 7.1.1.6 Illumination | 7-2 | 6.3.1.7 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.1.7 Simultaneous access | 7-2 | 6.3.1.8 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.1.8 Emergency controls and displays | 7-2 | 6.3.1.9 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.2.1 Functional grouping | 7-2 | 6.3.2.1 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.2.2 Location based on order of use | 7-2 | 6.3.2.2 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.2.3 Arrangement of groups | 7-2 | 6.3.2.3 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.2.4 Marking functional groups | 7-2 | 6.3.2.4 | 6-74 |

| | | | |
|---|-----|-------------|------|
| 7.1.2.5 Consistency | 7-2 | 6.3.2.5 | 6-74 |
| 7.1.2.6 Location and arrangement | 7-2 | 6.3.2.7 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.7 Arrangement within groups | 7-3 | 6.3.2.8 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.8 Logical flow arrangement | 7-3 | 6.3.2.9 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.9 Arrangement by importance or frequency of use | 7-3 | 6.3.2.10 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.10 Different arrangement of controls and displays | 7-3 | 6.3.2.11 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.11 Vertical and horizontal arrays | 7-3 | 6.3.2.12 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.12 Simultaneous use | 7-3 | 6.3.2.13 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.13 Multiple displays | 7-3 | 6.3.2.14 | 6-75 |
| 7.1.2.14 Combined control | 7-3 | 6.3.2.15 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.2.15 Displays selected by switches | 7-3 | 6.3.2.16 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.2.16 Separated controls and displays | 7-4 | 6.3.2.19 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.2.17 Arrangement of separated controls and displays | 7-4 | 6.3.2.20 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.2.18 Correspondence of controls and displays with equipment | 7-4 | 6.3.2.21 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.2.19 Alternative techniques | 7-4 | 6.3.2.22 | 6-76 |
| 7.1.3.1 Display response to control | 7-4 | 6.3.3.1 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.2 Display response time | 7-4 | 6.3.3.2 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.3 Moving pointer, circular scale | 7-4 | 6.3.3.3 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.4 Moving pointer, linear scale | 7-4 | 6.3.3.4 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.5 Digital displays and arrays of indicator lights | 7-4 | 6.3.3.5 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.6 Fixed pointer, moving scale | 7-4 | 6.3.3.6 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.7 Fixed pointer, moving circular scale | 7-5 | 6.3.3.7 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.8 Fixed pointer, moving linear scale | 7-5 | 6.3.3.8 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.9 Direct linkage | 7-5 | 6.3.3.9,.10 | 6-77 |
| 7.1.3.10 Common plane | 7-5 | 6.3.3.11 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.3.11 Movement direction | 7-5 | 6.3.3.12 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.3.12 Labeling | 7-5 | 6.3.3.13 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.4.1 Minimization of time | 7-5 | 6.3.4.1 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.4.2 Range of display movement | 7-5 | 6.3.4.2 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.4.3 Knob, coarse setting | 7-5 | 6.3.4.4 | 6-79 |
| 7.1.4.4 Knob, fine setting | 7-6 | 6.3.4.5 | 6-80 |
| 7.1.4.5 Bracketing | 7-6 | 6.3.4.6 | 6-80 |
| 7.1.4.6 Lever, coarse setting | 7-6 | 6.3.4.7 | 6-80 |
| 7.1.4.7 Lever, coarse two-dimensional setting | 7-6 | 6.3.4.7 | 6-80 |
| 7.1.4.8 Counters | 7-6 | 6.3.4.8 | 6-80 |
| 7.2.1.1.1 Clear indication of conditions | 7-6 | 5.1.1.1 | |
| 7.2.1.1.2 Legibility | 7-6 | 5.1.1.2 | |
| 7.2.1.1.3 Alerting and warning displays | 7-6 | 7.1.1.8 | |
| 7.2.1.1.4 Content | 7-7 | 8.1.5.1 | 8-6 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|---------|
| 7.2.1.1.5 Precision | 7-7 | 8.1.1.2 | 8-1 |
| 7.2.1.1.6 Directly usable | 7-7 | 8.1.1.4 | 8-1 |
| 7.2.1.1.7 Combined operator and maintainer information | 7-7 | 5.1.2.8 | 5-4 |
| 7.2.1.1.8 Unnecessary markings | 7-7 | 5.1.1.3 | 5-1 |
| 7.2.1.1.9 Display duration | 7-7 | 8.5.1.2 | 8-53 |
| 7.2.1.1.10 Timeliness | 7-7 | 5.2.1.1 | 5-7 |
| 7.2.1.1.11 Advisory and alerting displays | 7-7 | 3.12.14 | 3-25 |
| 7.2.1.2.1 Redundancy | 7-7 | 2.5.8 | 2-5 |
| 7.2.1.2.2 Display failure | 7-8 | 6.3.5 | 6-79 |
| 7.2.1.2.3 Display circuit failure | 7-8 | 7.1.3.3 | 7-4 |
| 7.2.1.3.1 Objectives | 7-8 | 8.6.1.1 | 8-54 |
| 7.2.1.3.2 Visual coding methods | 7-8 | 8.6.1.2 | 8-54 |
| 7.2.1.3.3 Consistency | 7-8 | 8.6.1.6 | 8-54 |
| 7.2.1.4.1 Analog and digital coding | 7-8 | 6.2.1.2.1 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.4.2 When to use digital displays | 7-8 | 6.2.1.2.2 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.4.3 When not to use digital displays | 7-8 | 6.2.1.2.3 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.4.4 When to use analog displays | 7-8 | 6.2.1.2.4 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.5.1 Alerting and warning displays | 7-9 | 7.1.1.8 | 7-1 |
| 7.2.1.5.2 Alarm parameter selection | 7-9 | 7.2.1.9 | 7-8 |
| 7.2.1.5.3 General alarms | 7-9 | 7.1 | 7-1 |
| 7.2.1.5.4 Prioritization of alarms | 7-9 | 7.1.2.1 | 7-2 |
| 7.2.1.5.5 Priority levels | 7-9 | 7.1.2.4 | 7-2 |
| 7.2.1.5.6 Visual coding of priority levels | 7-9 | 6.2.1.1 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.5.7 Audible coding of priority levels | 7-9 | 7.2.6,7 | 7-10,11 |
| 7.2.1.5.8 Emergency conditions | 7-9 | 6.2.1.1.5 | 6-53 |
| 7.2.1.5.9 Visual tiles | 7-9 | 6.2.1.1.7 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.5.10 Singular in purpose | 7-10 | 6.2.1.1.8 | 6-54 |
| 7.2.1.5.11 Automatic clearing of alarms | 7-10 | 7.2.6.6 | 7-11 |
| 7.2.1.5.12 Out-of-service alarms | 7-10 | 7.1.3.1,.3 | 7-4 |
| 7.2.1.5.13 Testing of alarms | 7-10 | 7.1.3.4 | 7-5 |
| 7.2.1.6.1 Location | 7-10 | 5.1.2.1 | 5-2 |
| 7.2.1.6.2 Accessibility | 7-10 | 5.1.2.2 | 5-2 |
| 7.2.1.6.3 Orientation and parallax | 7-10 | 5.1.2.7 | 5-2 |
| 7.2.1.6.4 Reflections | 7-11 | 5.2.3 | 5-12 |
| 7.2.1.6.5 Vibration | 7-10 | 5.1.2.17 | 5-7 |
| 7.2.1.6.6 Grouping | 7-10 | 5.1.2.8 | 5-4 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------|------|
| 7.2.1.6.7 Function and sequence | 7-10 | 5.1.2.9 | 5-4 |
| 7.2.1.6.8 Frequently used displays | 7-11 | 5.1.2.9 | 5-5 |
| 7.2.1.6.9 Important or critical displays | 7-12 | 5.1.2.10 | 5-5 |
| 7.2.1.6.10 Consistency | 7-11 | 5.2.1.11 | 5-5 |
| 7.2.1.6.11 Maximum viewing distance | 7-11 | 5.2.1.12 | 5-5 |
| 7.2.1.6.12 Absolute minimum viewing distance | 7-11 | 5.2.1.13 | 5-6 |
| 7.2.1.6.13 Preferred minimum viewing distance | 7-11 | 5.2.1.13 | 5-6 |
| 7.2.1.6.14 Minimum viewing distance to CRTs | 7-11 | 5.2.1.14 | 5-6 |
| 7.2.2.1.1 When to use | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.1 | 6-55 |
| 7.2.2.1.2 Meaning of illumination | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.3 | 6-55 |
| 7.2.2.1.3 Positive feedback | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.4 | 6-55 |
| 7.2.2.1.4 Meaning of no illumination | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.5 | 6-55 |
| 7.2.2.1.5 Grouping of indicator lights | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.6 | 6-56 |
| 7.2.2.1.6 Location of transilluminated indicators | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.7 | 6-56 |
| 7.2.2.1.7 Location of indicators for critical functions | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.8 | 6-56 |
| 7.2.2.1.8 Maintenance displays | 7-13 | 6.2.2.1.10 | 6-57 |
| 7.2.2.1.9 Luminance | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.11 | 6-57 |
| 7.2.2.1.10 Variable luminance | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.13 | 6-57 |
| 7.2.2.1.11 False or obscured indication | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.15 | 6-57 |
| 7.2.2.1.12 Contrast within an indicator | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.17 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.13 Low ambient illumination | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.18 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.14 Lamp redundancy | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.19 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.15 Lamp testing | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.21 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.16 Indicator circuit testing | 7-14 | 6.2.2.1.23 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.17 Removal and replacement of lamps | 7-15 | 6.2.2.1.24 | 6-58 |
| 7.2.2.1.18 Nonhazardous lamp replacement | 7-15 | 6.2.2.1.25 | 6-59 |
| 7.2.2.1.19 Proper installation of indicator covers | 7-15 | 6.2.2.1.26 | 6-59 |
| 7.2.2.1.20 Color coding | 7-15 | 6.2.2.1.27 | 6-59 |
| 7.2.2.1.21 Flashing lights | 7-16 | 6.2.2.1.28 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.1 When to use | 7-15 | 6.2.2.2.1 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.2 Color coding | 7-15 | 6.2.2.2.2 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.3 Size of legend lights | 7-15 | 6.2.2.2.3 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.4 Illuminated label versus illuminated background | 7-15 | 6.2.2.2.4,5 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.5 Lettering of legends | 7-15 | 6.2.2.2.6 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.6 Visibility and legibility of lettering | 7-16 | 6.2.2.2.7 | 6-60 |
| 7.2.2.2.7 Multi-legend indicators | 7-16 | 6.2.2.2.8 | 6-61 |
| 7.2.2.3.1 When to use | 7-17 | 6.2.2.3.1 | 6-61 |
| 7.2.2.3.2 Spacing | 7-17 | 6.2.2.3.2 | 6-61 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|------|
| 7.2.2.3.3 Coding | 7-17 | 6.2.2.3.3 | 6-61 |
| 7.2.2.4.1 When to use | 7-18 | 6.2.2.4.1 | 6-62 |
| 7.2.2.4.2 Large, single, pictorial graphic panels | 7-18 | 6.2.2.4.2 | 6-62 |
| 7.2.2.4.3 Replacing lamps | 7-18 | 6.2.4.3 | 6-62 |
| 7.2.2.4.4 Brightness | 7-18 | 6.2.2.4.5 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.3.1.1 When to use | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.1 | 6-68 |
| 7.2.3.1.2 Type of information | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.2 | 6-68 |
| 7.2.3.1.3 Linear scales | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.3 | 6-68 |
| 7.2.3.1.4 Scale graduations | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.4 | 6-68 |
| 7.2.3.1.5 Intermediate marks | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.5 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.6 Numerals | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.6 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.7 Scale starting point | 7-19 | 6.2.6.1.7 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.8 Pointer length | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.8 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.9 Pointer tip | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.9 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.10 Pointer mounting | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.10 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.11 Pointer color | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.11 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.12 Luminance contrast | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.12 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.13 Calibration information | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.13 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.14 Coding | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.14 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.15 Pattern or color coding | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.15 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.16 Use of colors | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.16 | 6-69 |
| 7.2.3.1.17 Pattern-coding | 7-20 | 6.2.6.1.17 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.1 Numerical progression | 7-20 | 6.2.6.2.1 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.2 Orientation | 7-20 | 6.2.6.2.2 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.3 Scale reading and pointer movement | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.3 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.4 Zero position and direction of movement | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.4 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.5 Pointer alignment, circular scales | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.5 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.6 Scale break | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.7 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.7 Number of pointers | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.8 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.8 Pointer alignment, noncircular scales | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.9 | 6-70 |
| 7.2.3.2.9 Relative position of scale marks and numbers | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.10 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.2.10 Placement of pointers | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.12 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.2.11 Placement of numbers | 7-21 | 6.2.6.2.13 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.3.1 When to use | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.1 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.3.2 Numerical progression | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.2 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.3.3 Orientation | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.4 | 6-71 |
| 7.2.3.3.4 Alignment of pointer or fixed reference line | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.5 | 6-72 |
| 7.2.3.3.5 Setting | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.6 | 6-72 |
| 7.2.3.3.6 Tracking | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.7 | 6-72 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------|------|
| 7.2.3.3.7 Moving tape displays | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.8 | 6-72 |
| 7.2.3.3.8 Composite scalar and pictorial displays | 7-22 | 6.2.6.3.9 | 6-72 |
| 7.2.4.1.1 Refresh rate | 7-23 | 5.2.1.1 | 5-7 |
| 7.2.4.1.2 Screen phosphor and persistence | 7-23 | 5.2.1.3 | 5-9 |
| 7.2.4.1.3 Geometric distortion | 7-23 | 5.2.1.6 | 5-9 |
| 7.2.4.1.4 Chromatic aberration | 7-23 | 5.2.1.5 | 5-9 |
| 7.2.4.1.5 Luminance | 7-23 | 5.2.2 | 5-10 |
| 7.2.4.2.1 Preferred colors | 7-23 | 8.6.2.2.11 | 8-57 |
| 7.2.4.2.2 Color saturation | 7-23 | 8.6.2.5.6 | 8-60 |
| 7.2.4.2.3 Color coding | 7-23 | 8.6.2.2.10 | 8-57 |
| 7.2.4.2.4 Limitations of color usage | 7-23 | 8.6.2.2.1.2 | 8-58 |
| 7.2.4.3.1 Screen luminance | 7-24 | 5.2.2.3 | 5-10 |
| 7.2.4.3.2 Faint signals | 7-24 | 5.2.2.6 | 5-11 |
| 7.2.4.3.3 Luminance range of adjacent surfaces | 7-24 | 5.2.2.7 | 5-11 |
| 7.2.4.3.4 Ambient illuminance | 7-24 | 5.2.2.8 | 5-11 |
| 7.2.4.3.5 Medium to high ambient illumination | 7-24 | 5.2.2.9 | 5-11 |
| 7.2.4.4.1 Glare | 7-25 | 5.2.3.1. | 5-12 |
| 7.2.4.4.2 Adjacent surfaces | 7-25 | 5.2.3.2 | 5-12 |
| 7.2.4.4.3 Avoiding reflected glare | 7-25 | 5.2.3.3 | 5-12 |
| 7.2.4.4.4 Etched filters | 7-25 | 5.2.3.3 | 5-12 |
| 7.2.4.5.1 Viewing distance | 7-25 | 5.1.2.13 | 5-6 |
| 7.2.4.5.2 Variable viewing distance | 7-25 | 5.1.2.3 | 5-2 |
| 7.2.4.5.3 Viewing angle and screen orientation | 7-26 | 5.1.2.4 | 5-2 |
| 7.2.4.6.1 Font legibility | 7-26 | 8.2.5.7.5.6 | 8-17 |
| 7.2.4.6.2 Character size (height) | 7-26 | 8.2.5.6.5.6 | 8-16 |
| 7.2.4.6.3 Luminance contrast | 7-26 | 8.2.6.5.12 | 8-16 |
| 7.2.4.6.4 Medium to high ambient illumination | 7-27 | 5.2.2.9 | 5-11 |
| 7.2.4.6.5 Resolution | 7-27 | 6.2.3.4 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.4.7.4 Display updating | 7-27 | 5.1.1.4 | 5-1 |
| 7.2.4.7.5 Character height-to-width ratio | 7-27 | 8.2.5.6.10 | 8-17 |
| 7.2.4.7.6 Stroke width | 7-27 | 8.2.5.6.14 | 8-17 |
| 7.2.4.7.7 Spacing between characters | 7-28 | 8.2.5.6.1 | 8-15 |
| 7.2.4.7.8 Spacing between words | 7-28 | 8.2.5.6.2 | 8-15 |
| 7.2.4.7.9 Spacing between lines | 7-28 | 8.2.5.6.3 | 8-15 |
| 7.2.5.1.1 When to use | 7-28 | 5.7.1.1 | 5-18 |
| 7.2.5.1.2 When not to use | 7-28 | 5.7.1.2 | 5-18 |
| 7.2.5.1.3 Viewing distance | 7-28 | 5.7.1.3 | 5-18 |
| 7.2.5.1.4 Physical interruption of view | 7-28 | 5.7.1.4 | 5-18 |
| 7.2.5.1.5 Control of displayed information | 7-29 | 5.7.1.5 | 5-18 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-------------|------|
| 7.2.5.1.6 Content of displayed information | 7-29 | 5.7.1.6 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.1.7 Minimum matrix | 7-29 | 8.2.5.6.15 | 8-17 |
| 7.2.5.1.8 Character size | 7-29 | 8.2.5.6.5 | 8-16 |
| 7.2.5.1.9 Luminance | 7-29 | 5.2.2.2 | 5-10 |
| 7.2.5.1.11 Character aspect ratio | 7-29 | 8.2.5.6.5 | 8-16 |
| 7.2.5.1.12 Modulation depth | 7-29 | 5.3.8 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.5.1.13 Polarity | 7-29 | 5.3.8 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.5.1.14 Background for colored objects | 7-29 | 8.6.2.6.6 | 8-61 |
| 7.2.5.2.1 When to use | 7-30 | 5.7.2.1 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.2.2 Viewing distance and screen size | 7-30 | 5.7.2.3 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.2.3 Viewing angle | 7-30 | 5.7.2.4,.5 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.2.4 Image luminance and light distribution | 7-30 | 5.7.2.6 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.2.5 Character style | 7-30 | 8.2.5.7 | |
| 7.2.5.2.6 Character size | 7-30 | 8.2.5.6.5 | 8-16 |
| 7.2.5.2.7 Luminance ratio | 7-31 | 5.7.2.9,.10 | 5-20 |
| 7.2.5.2.8 Minimum luminance ratio | 7-31 | 5.7.2.11 | 5-20 |
| 7.2.5.2.9 Superimposed images | 7-31 | 5.7.2.13 | 5-20 |
| 7.2.5.2.10 Alignment | 7-31 | 8.2.5.3 | 8-13 |
| 7.2.5.2.11 Minimizing distortion | 7-31 | 5.7.2.15 | 5-20 |
| 7.2.5.2.12 Projection displays | 7-31 | 5.7.2.1 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.5.2.13 Reflected luminance of screen | 7-31 | 5.7.2.6 | 5-20 |
| 7.2.5.2.14 Alternative projection methods | 7-31 | 5.7.2.2 | 5-19 |
| 7.2.6.1 Seven-segment displays | 7-32 | 6.2.3.1 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.6.2 Matrix size | 7-32 | 6.2.3.2,.3 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.6.3 Visual angle | 7-32 | 6.2.3.4 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.6.4 Viewing angle | 7-32 | 6.2.3.5 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.6.5 Emitter color | 7-32 | 6.2.3.6 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.6.6 Intensity control | 7-32 | 6.2.3.7 | 6-63 |
| 7.2.7.1 General | 7-32 | 6.2.4.1 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.7.2 When to use | 7-32 | 6.2.4.2 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.7.3 Intensity control | 7-32 | 6.2.4.3 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.7.4 Color coding | 7-33 | 6.2.4.4 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.7.5 Testing | 7-33 | 6.2.4.6 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.7.6 Location of red alphanumeric LEDs and segmented displays | 7-33 | 6.2.4.7 | 6-64 |
| 7.2.8.1.1 Character formation -- vertical orientation | 7-33 | 5.3.1 | 5-13 |
| 7.2.8.1.2 Character formation -- nonvertical orientation | 7-33 | 5.3.2 | 5-13 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-----------|------|
| 7.2.8.1.3 Character stroke width | 7-33 | 5.3.3 | 5-14 |
| 7.2.8.1.4 Character height-width relationship | 7-33 | 5.3.4 | 5-14 |
| 7.2.8.1.5 Image formation time | 7-34 | 5.3.5 | 5-14 |
| 7.2.8.1.6 Pixel failure rate | 7-34 | 5.3.7 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.8.1.7 Text redundancy to counteract display element failure | 7-34 | 2.5.8 | 2-5 |
| 7.2.8.1.8 Display polarity | 7-34 | 5.3.8 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.8.1.9 First-surface treatment for flat panel displays | 7-34 | 5.3.9 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.8.2.1 Ambient illumination | 7-34 | 5.4.1 | 5-16 |
| 7.2.8.2.2 Polarity | 7-35 | 5.4.2 | 5-16 |
| 7.2.8.2.3 Minimize backlighting | 7-35 | 5.4.3 | 5-16 |
| 7.2.8.2.4 Low ambient illumination | 7-35 | 5.4.4 | 5-16 |
| 7.2.8.2.5 Minimize off-axis of backlighted LCDs | 7-35 | 5.4.5 | 5-16 |
| 7.2.8.4.1 Applicable guidelines | 7-35 | 5.4 | 5-15 |
| 7.2.8.4.2 Alphanumeric character and symbol size | 7-35 | 5.6.1 | 5-17 |
| 7.2.8.4.3 Prototyping | 7-35 | 5.6.2 | 5-17 |
| 7.2.8.4.4 Verified by users | 7-36 | 5.6.3 | 5-18 |
| 7.2.8.5.1 Meaningful use | 7-36 | 5.8.1 | 5-21 |
| 7.2.8.5.2 No performance degradation | 7-36 | 5.8.2 | 5-21 |
| 7.2.8.5.3 No interocular crosstalk | 7-36 | 5.8.3 | 5-21 |
| 7.2.8.5.4 Color in three-dimensional displays | 7-36 | 5.8.4 | 5-21 |
| 7.2.8.5.5 Dynamic displays | 7-36 | 5.8.5 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.8.5.6 Spatial separation of depth-coded objects | 7-36 | 5.8.6 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.8.5.7 Size scaling | 7-36 | 5.8.7 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.8.5.8 Luminance and depth | 7-36 | 5.8.9 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.8.6.1 Minimal parallax | 7-37 | 9.4.2.6 | 9-24 |
| 7.2.8.6.2 Minimal specular glare | 7-38 | 9.4.2.7 | 9-24 |
| 7.2.9.1.1 When to use | 7-38 | 6.2.5.1.1 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.2 Mounting | 7-38 | 6.2.5.1.2 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.3 Movement | 7-39 | 6.2.5.1.3 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.4 Illumination | 7-39 | 6.2.5.1.4 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.5 Spacing between numerals | 7-39 | 6.2.5.1.5 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.6 Finish | 7-39 | 6.2.5.1.6 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.1.7 Contrast | 7-39 | 6.2.5.1.7 | 6-66 |
| 7.2.9.2.1 When to use | 7-39 | 5.9.1 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.9.2.2 Contrast | 7-39 | 5.9.2 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.9.2.3 Illumination | 7-39 | 5.9.3 | 5-22 |
| 7.2.9.2.4 Take-up provision | 7-39 | 5.9.4 | 5-23 |
| 7.2.9.2.5 Annotation | 7-40 | 5.9.5 | 5-23 |
| 7.2.9.2.6 Legibility | 7-40 | 5.9.6 | 5-23 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|------|
| 7.2.9.2.7 Printed edges (tapes) | 7-40 | 5.9.7 | 5-23 |
| 7.2.9.2.8 Control, replenishment, and service | 7-40 | 5.9.8 | 5-23 |
| 7.2.9.3.1 When to use | 7-40 | 5.10.1 | 5-24 |
| | | | |
| 7.2.9.3.2 Visibility | 7-40 | 5.10.2 | 5-24 |
| 7.2.9.3.3 Contrast | 7-40 | 5.10.3 | 5-24 |
| 7.2.9.3.4 Take-up provision | 7-40 | 5.10.4 | 5-24 |
| | | | |
| 7.2.9.3.5 Job aids | | 5.10.5, 6 | 5-24 |
| | | | |
| 7.2.9.3.6 Smudging and smearing | | 5.10.7 | 5-24 |
| 7.2.9.3.7 Annotation | 7-41 | 5.10.8 | 5-24 |
| 7.2.9.3.8 Control, replenishment, and service | 7-41 | 5.10.9 | 5-24 |
| 7.2.9.4.1 When to use | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.1 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.2 Mounting | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.2 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.3 Snap action | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.3 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.4 Contrast | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.4 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.5 Malfunction indication | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.5 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.6 Legend | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.6 | 6-67 |
| 7.2.9.4.7 Test provision | 7-41 | 6.2.5.2.7 | 6-67 |
| 7.3.1.1 Single audio displays | 7-42 | 7.2.1.1 | 7-5 |
| 7.3.1.2 When to use | 7-42 | 7.2.1.2 | 7-5 |
| 7.3.1.3 Signal type | 7-42 | 7.2.1.7 | 7-6 |
| 7.3.1.4 False alarms | 7-43 | 7.1.3.2 | 7-4 |
| 7.3.1.5 Failure | 7-42 | 7.1.3.3 | 7-4 |
| 7.3.1.6 Circuit operability test | 7-42 | 7.1.3.4 | 7-5 |
| 7.3.1.7 Redundant visual warning | 7-42 | 7.1.1.11 | 7-2 |
| 7.3.2.1.1 General | 7-43 | 7.1.1.1 | |
| 7.3.2.1.2 Alerting and warning system | 7-43 | 7.1.1.3 | |
| | | | |
| 7.3.2.2.1 Nature of signals | 7-44 | 7.2.5.2 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.2.2 Two-element signals | 7-44 | 7.2.6.1 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.2.3 Single-element signal | 7-44 | 7.2.6.3 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.2.2.4 Caution signals | 7-44 | 7.1.2.7, 8 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.2.2.5 Relation to visual displays | 7-44 | 7.1.11.12 | 7-2 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------|------|
| 7.3.2.2.6 Frequency range | 7-44 | 7.2.7.2 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.2.2.7 Spurious signals | 7-44 | 7.2.7.6 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.2.2.8 Audibility | 7-44 | 7.2.7.1 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.2.2.9 Compatibility with clothing and equipment | 7-44 | 7.2.8.2 | 7-12 |
| | | | |
| 7.3.2.3.1 Audibility | 7-45 | 7.2.8.3 | 7-12 |
| 7.3.2.3.2 Maximum intensity | 7-45 | 7.2.8.4 | 7-12 |
| 7.3.2.3.3 Attention | 7-45 | 7.2.8.1 | 7-12 |
| 7.3.2.3.5 Dichotic presentation | 7-45 | 7.2.10.4 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.2.3.6 Headset | 7-45 | 7.2.10.1 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.2.3.7 When not to use headsets | 7-45 | 7.2.10.2 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.2.3.8 Multiple audio signals | 7-45 | 7.2.3.3 | 7-9 |
| 7.3.2.3.9 Coding | 7-46 | 7.2.3.5 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.3.10 Differentiation from routine signals | 7-46 | 7.2.3.2 | 7-9 |
| 7.3.2.3.11 Consistent signals | 7-46 | 7.2.4.1 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.3.12 Acoustic environment | 7-46 | 7.2.4.3 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.3.13 Noninterference | 7-46 | 7.2.3.5 | 7-10 |
| 7.3.2.3.14 Separate channels | 7-46 | 7.2.10.3 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.3.1 Nature of signals | 7-46 | 7.3.1.2 | 7-15 |
| 7.3.3.2 Intensity | 7-46 | 7.3.2 | 7-15 |
| 7.3.3.3 Type of voice | 7-47 | 7.3.4.4 | 7-17 |
| 7.3.3.4 Delivery style | 7-47 | 7.3.4.5 | 7-17 |
| 7.3.3.5 Speech processing | 7-47 | 7.3.4.7 | 7-17 |
| 7.3.3.6 Message content | 7-47 | 7.3.4.3 | 7-16 |
| 7.3.3.7 Critical warning signals | 7-47 | 7.3.4.6 | 7-17 |
| 7.3.3.8 Message priorities | 7-47 | 7.1.2.3 | 7-2 |
| 7.3.4.1.1 Automatic and manual shutoff | 7-47 | 7.2.9.8 | 7-13 |
| 7.3.4.1.2 Automatic reset | 7-47 | 7.2.9.9 | 7-13 |
| 7.3.4.2.1 Control of volume | 7-48 | 7.2.8.6 | 7-12 |
| 7.3.4.2.2 Ganging to mode switches | 7-48 | 7.2.9.10 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.4.2.3 Caution signal controls | 7-48 | 7.2.9.11 | 7-14 |
| 7.3.4.2.4 Duration | 7-48 | 7.2.6.4 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.4.2.5 Duration limitations | 7-48 | 7.2.6.5 | 7-11 |
| 7.3.5.1.1 Frequency range | 7-48 | 7.4.2.1 | 7-18 |
| 7.3.5.1.2 Dynamic range | 7-48 | 7.4.2.2 | 7-18 |
| 7.3.5.1.3 Noise cancelling microphones | 7-49 | 7.4.2.3 | 7-18 |
| 7.3.5.1.4 Pre-emphasis | 7-49 | 7.4.2.4 | 7-19 |
| 7.3.5.1.5 Noise shields | 7-49 | 7.4.2.5 | 7-19 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|------|
| 7.3.5.2.1 Frequency range | 7-49 | 7.4.3.1 | 7-19 |
| 7.3.5.2.2 Use of de-emphasis | 7-49 | 7.4.3.2 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.2.3 Monitoring of speakers | 7-50 | 7.4.3.3 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.2.4 Filtering of speaker signals | 7-50 | 7.4.3.4 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.2.5 Use of binaural headsets | 7-50 | 7.4.3.6 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.2.6 Binaural headsets | 7-50 | 7.4.3.7 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.3.1 Comfort | 7-50 | 7.4.4.1 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.3.2 Hands-free operation | 7-50 | 7.4.4.2 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.3.3 Accessibility of handsets | 7-50 | 7.4.4.3 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.4.1 Volume controls | 7-51 | 7.4.5.1 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.4.2 Separate controls for power and volume | 7-51 | 7.4.5.1 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.4.3 Combined power and volume controls | 7-51 | 7.4.5.3 | 7-21 |
| 7.3.5.4.4 Squelch control | 7-51 | 7.4.5.4 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.4.5 Foot-operated controls | 7-51 | 7.4.5.5 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.4.6 Duplicate emergency controls | 7-51 | 7.4.5.6 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.4.7 Speaker and side tone | 7-51 | 7.4.3.5 | 7-20 |
| 7.3.5.5.1 General | 7-52 | 7.4.6.1 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.5.2 Cords | 7-52 | 7.4.6.2 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.5.3 Handset cradles | 7-52 | 7.4.6.3 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.5.4 Multiple telephones | 7-52 | 7.4.6.4 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.5.5 Press-to-talk button | 7-52 | 7.4.6.5 | 7-22 |
| 7.3.5.5.6 Switching | 7-52 | 7.4.6.6 | 7-23 |
| 7.3.5.5.7 Priority | 7-52 | 7.4.6.7 | 7-23 |
| 7.3.5.5.8 Noisy environments | 7-52 | 7.4.6.8 | 7-23 |
| 7.3.5.6.1 Evaluation method | 7-52 | 7.4.1.1 | 7-17 |
| 7.3.5.6.2 Intelligibility criteria | 7-52 | 7.4.1.2 | 7-18 |
| 7.4.1.1.1 Distribution of workload | 7-53 | 6.1.1.1.1 | 6-1 |
| 7.4.1.1.2 Multirotation controls | 7-53 | 6.1.1.1.2 | 6-1 |
| 7.4.1.1.3 Detent stops | 7-53 | 6.1.1.1.3 | 6-1 |
| 7.4.1.1.4 Limit stops | 7-53 | 6.1.1.1.4 | 6-1 |
| 7.4.1.1.5 Characteristics of common controls | 7-53 | 6.1.1.1.5 | 6-2 |
| 7.4.1.2.1 Consistency of movement | 7-56 | 6.1.1.2.1 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.2.2 Valve controls | 7-58 | 6.1.1.2.2 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.2.3 Labeling and marking valve controls | 7-58 | 6.1.1.2.3 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.3.1 Grouping | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.1 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.3.2 Sequential operation | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.3 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.3.3 Location of primary controls | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.4 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.3.4 Consistency | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.5 | 6-4 |
| 7.4.1.3.5 Remote controls | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.6 | 6-4 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|------|
| 7.4.1.3.6 Maintenance and adjustment | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.7 | 6-5 |
| 7.4.1.3.7 Spacing | 7-58 | 6.1.1.3.8 | 6-5 |
| 7.4.1.4.1 Methods and requirements | 7-57 | 6.1.1.4.1 | 6-6 |
| 7.4.1.4.2 Location coding | 7-59 | 6.1.1.4.3. | 6-7 |
| 7.4.1.4.3 Size coding | 7-60 | 6.1.1.4.4 | 6-7 |
| 7.4.1.4.4 Shape coding | 7-60 | 6.1.1.4.8 | 6-7 |
| 7.4.1.4.5 Color coding | 7-60 | 6.1.1.4.10 | 6-8 |
| 7.4.1.4.6 Association of control with display | 7-60 | 6.1.1.4.11 | 6-8 |
| 7.4.1.4.7 Control panel contrast | 7-61 | 6.1.1.4.12 | 6-8 |
| 7.4.1.4.8 Ambient lighting and limitations on color coding | 7-61 | 6.1.1.4.13 | 6-8 |
| 7.4.1.5.1 Compatibility with handwear | 7-61 | 6.1.1.5.1 | 6-8 |
| 7.4.1.5.2 Use of prototypes | 7-61 | 6.1.1.5.2 | 6-9 |
| 7.4.1.5.3 Blind operation | 7-61 | 6.1.1.5.3 | 6-9 |
| 7.4.1.6.1 Location and design | 7-62 | 6.1.1.6.1 | 6-9 |
| 7.4.1.6.2 Internal controls | 7-62 | 6.1.1.6.2 | 6-9 |
| 7.4.1.6.3 Rapid operation | 7-62 | 6.1.1.6.3 | 6-9 |
| 7.4.1.6.4 Methods | 7-62 | 6.1.1.6.4 | 6-10 |
| 7.4.1.6.5 "Dead man" controls | 7-62 | 6.1.1.6.5 | 6-10 |
| 7.4.2.1 When to use | 7-63 | 6.1.3.1 | 6-17 |
| 7.4.2.2 When not to use | 7-63 | 6.1.3.2 | 6-17 |
| 7.4.2.3 Operation | 7-63 | 6.1.3.3,.4 | 6-18 |
| 7.4.2.4 Configuration and placement | 7-63 | 6.1.3.5 | 6-18 |
| 7.4.3.1 Foot-operated switch specifications | 7-64 | 6.1.4.1 | 6-19 |
| 7.4.3.2 When to use | 7-64 | 6.1.4.3 | 6-19 |
| 7.4.3.3 Operation | 7-64 | 6.1.4.4 | 6-19 |
| 7.4.3.4 Operation in wet or slippery conditions | 7-65 | 6.1.4.6 | 6-20 |
| 7.4.3.5 Feedback | 7-65 | 6.1.4.7 | 6-20 |
| 7.4.4.1.1 Rotary selector switch specifications | 7-65 | 6.1.5.1.1 | 6-20 |
| 7.4.4.1.2 When to use | 7-65 | 6.1.5.1.2 | 6-20 |
| 7.4.4.1.3 Moving pointer, fixed scale | 7-66 | 6.1.5.1.4 | 6-20 |
| 7.4.4.1.4 Shape | 7-65 | 6.1.5.1.5 | 6-20 |
| | | | |
| 7.4.4.1.6 Placement of switch positions | | 6.3.3.9 | 6-77 |
| 7.4.4.1.7 Switch resistance | 7-66 | 6.1.5.3.12 | 6-25 |
| 7.4.4.1.8 Reference line | 7-66 | 6.1.5.1.7 | 6-22 |
| 7.4.4.1.9 Parallax | 7-67 | 6.1.5.1.8 | 6-22 |
| 7.4.4.2.1 Key-operated switch specifications | 7-67 | 6.1.5.2.1 | 6-22 |
| 7.4.4.2.2 Color, shape, and size coding | 7-67 | 6.1.5.2.2 | 6-23 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------|------|
| 7.4.4.2.3 Marking and labeling | 7-67 | 6.1.5.2.3 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.2.4 Teeth on both edges | 7-67 | 6.1.5.2.4 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.2.5 Teeth on a single edge | 7-68 | 6.1.5.2.5 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.2.6 ON-OFF switches | 7-68 | 6.1.5.2.6 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.2.7 Direction of rotation | 7-68 | 6.1.5.2.7 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.2.8 Key removal | 7-68 | 6.1.5.2.8 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.3.1 When to use | 7-68 | 6.1.5.3.1 | 6-23 |
| 7.4.4.3.2 Shape | 7-68 | 6.1.5.3.2 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.3 Coding | 7-68 | 6.1.5.3.4 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.4 Direction of movement | 7-68 | 6.1.5.3.6 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.5 Internal illuminance and appearance of characters | 7-68 | 6.1.5.3.7 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.6 External illuminance and appearance of characters | 7-69 | 6.1.5.3.8 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.7 Visibility | 7-69 | 6.1.5.3.9 | 6-24 |
| 7.4.4.3.8 Dimensions | 7-69 | 6.1.5.3.10 | 6-25 |
| 7.4.4.3.9 Resistance | 7-69 | 6.1.5.3.12 | 6-25 |
| 7.4.4.3.10 Separation | 7-69 | 6.1.5.3.13 | 6-25 |
| 7.4.4.4.1 Knob specifications | 7-70 | 6.1.5.4.1 | 6-26 |
| 7.4.4.4.2 When to use | 7-70 | 6.1.5.4.2 | 6-28 |
| 7.4.4.4.3 Knob style | 7-71 | 6.1.5.4.5 | 6-28 |
| 7.4.4.5.1 Ganged control knob specifications | 7-72 | 6.1.5.5.1 | 6-29 |
| 7.4.4.5.2 When to use | 7-72 | 6.1.5.5.2 | 6-29 |
| 7.4.4.5.3 Serrations | 7-72 | 6.1.5.5.3 | 6-29 |
| 7.4.4.5.4 Marking | 7-72 | 6.1.5.5.6 | 6-30 |
| 7.4.4.5.5 Knob and display relationship | 7-73 | 6.1.5.5.7 | 6-30 |
| 7.4.4.5.6 Inadvertent movement, critical | 7-73 | 6.1.5.5.8 | 6-30 |
| 7.4.4.5.7 Inadvertent movement, noncritical | 7-73 | 6.1.5.5.9 | 6-30 |
| 7.4.4.6.1 Continuous thumbwheel specifications | 7-73 | 6.1.5.6.1 | 6-31 |
| 7.4.4.6.2 When to use | 7-74 | 6.1.5.6.2 | 6-31 |
| 7.4.4.6.3 Orientation and movement | 7-74 | 6.1.5.6.3 | 6-31 |
| 7.4.4.6.4 Turning aids | 7-75 | 6.1.5.6.4 | 6-31 |
| 7.4.4.6.5 OFF position | 7-75 | 6.1.5.6.5 | 6-31 |
| 7.4.4.7.1 Crank specifications | 7-75 | 6.1.5.7.1 | 6-32 |
| 7.4.4.7.2 When to use | 7-75 | 6.1.5.7.2 | 6-33 |
| 7.4.4.7.3 Grip handle | 7-76 | 6.1.5.7.5 | 6-33 |
| 7.4.4.7.4 Folding handles | 7-75 | 6.1.5.7.6 | 6-33 |
| 7.4.4.7.5 Crank balance | 7-75 | 6.1.5.7.7 | 6-33 |
| 7.4.4.8.1 Push button specifications | 7-75 | 6.1.5.8.1 | 6-34 |
| 7.4.4.8.2 When to use | 7-77 | 6.1.5.8.2 | 6-36 |
| 7.4.4.8.3 When not to use | 7-77 | 6.1.5.8.3 | 6-36 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------------|------|
| 7.4.4.8.4 Shape | 7-78 | 6.1.5.8.4 | 6-36 |
| 7.4.4.8.5 Positive feedback | 7-78 | 6.1.5.8.5 | 6-36 |
| 7.4.4.8.6 Prevention of inadvertent operation | 7-78 | 6.1.5.8.6 | 6-36 |
| 7.4.4.9.1 When to use | 7-78 | 9.1.1 | 9-4 |
| 7.4.4.9.2 Numeric keyboards | 7-78 | 9.1.2,,3,,4,,5 | 9-4 |
| 7.4.4.9.3 Alphanumeric keyboards | 7-78 | 9.1.6 | 9-4 |
| 7.4.4.9.4 Two-dimensional cursor control | 7-78 | 9.1.13 | 9-5 |
| 7.4.4.9.5 Cursor control key layout | 7-78 | 9.1.14 | 9-5 |
| 7.4.4.9.6 Consistent keyboards | 7-78 | 9.1.20 | 9-9 |
| 7.4.4.9.7 Positive feedback | 7-78 | 9.1.16 | 9-9 |
| 7.4.4.10.1 Toggle switch specifications | 7-79 | 6.1.5.9.1 | 6-36 |
| 7.4.4.10.2 When to use | 7-79 | 6.1.5.9.4 | 6-38 |
| 7.4.4.10.3 Three-position toggle switches | 7-80 | 6.1.5.9.5 | 6-38 |
| 7.4.4.10.4 Preventing accidental actuation | 7-79 | 6.1.5.9.7 | 6-38 |
| 7.4.4.10.5 Positive feedback | 7-79 | 6.1.5.9.10 | 6-38 |
| 7.4.4.10.6 Orientation | 7-79 | 6.1.5.9.11,,12 | 6-38 |
| 7.4.4.11.1 Legend switch specifications | 7-79 | 6.1.5.10.1 | 6-39 |
| 7.4.4.11.2 Barriers | 7-81 | 6.1.5.10.2,,3 | 6-39 |
| 7.4.4.11.3 Positive feedback | 7-81 | 6.1.5.10.4 | 6-40 |
| 7.4.4.11.4 Legibility of legend | 7-81 | 6.1.5.10.5 | 6-40 |
| 7.4.4.11.5 Lamp replacement | 7-81 | 6.1.5.10.6 | 6-40 |
| 7.4.4.11.6 Cover replacement | 7-82 | 6.1.5.10.7 | 6-40 |
| 7.4.4.11.7 Legends | 7-82 | 6.1.5.10.8 | 6-40 |
| 7.4.4.12.1 Rocker switch specifications | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.1 | 6-41 |
| 7.4.4.12.2 When to use | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.4 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.3 Three-position rocker switches | 7-83 | 6.1.5.11.5 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.4 Preventing accidental actuation | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.6 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.5 Positive feedback | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.7 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.6 Orientation | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.8 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.7 Illumination | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.9 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.12.8 Labels | 7-82 | 6.1.5.11.10 | 6-42 |
| 7.4.4.13.1 Slide switch specifications | 7-84 | 6.1.5.12.1 | 6-43 |
| 7.4.4.13.2 Preventing accidental actuation | 7-84 | 6.1.5.12.5 | 6-44 |
| 7.4.4.13.3 Orientation | 7-84 | 6.1.5.12.6,,7 | 6-44 |
| 7.4.4.13.4 Positive feedback | 7-85 | 6.1.5.12.8 | 6-44 |
| 7.4.4.14.1 Push-pull control specifications | 7-85 | 6.1.5.13.1 | 6-44 |
| 7.4.4.14.2 When to use | 7-85 | 6.1.5.13.2 | 6-46 |

| | | | |
|---|------|---------------|----------|
| 7.4.4.14.3 Rotation | 7-86 | 6.1.5.13.3 | 6-46 |
| 7.4.4.14.4 Detents | 7-85 | 6.1.5.13.4 | 6-46 |
| 7.4.4.14.5 Snagging and inadvertent operation | 7-85 | 6.1.5.13.5 | 6-46 |
| 7.4.4.14.6 Direction of movement | 7-85 | 6.1.5.13.6 | 6-46 |
| 7.4.4.14.7 Resistance | 7-86 | 6.1.5.13.7 | 6-46 |
| 7.4.4.15.1 Dimensions | 7-87 | 6.1.5.14.1 | 6-47 |
| 7.4.4.15.2 Resistance | 7-87 | 6.1.5.14.2 | 6-47 |
| 7.4.4.15.3 Displacement | 7-87 | 6.1.5.14.3 | 6-47 |
| 7.4.4.15.4 Separation | 7-87 | 6.1.5.14.5 | 6-47 |
| 7.4.4.15.5 Shape | 7-87 | 6.1.5.14.6 | 6-47 |
| 7.4.4.16.1 Lever specifications | 7-87 | 6.1.5.15.1 | 6-48 |
| 7.4.4.16.2 When to use | 7-87 | 6.1.5.15.2 | 6-50 |
| 7.4.4.16.3 Coding | 7-88 | 6.1.5.15.3 | 6-50 |
| 7.4.4.16.4 Labeling | 7-89 | 6.1.5.15.4 | 6-50 |
| 7.4.4.16.5 Limb support | 7-89 | 6.1.5.15.2 | 6-50 |
| 7.4.4.17.1 Specifications | 7-89 | 9.3.3.2.1 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.17.2 Movement characteristics | 7-89 | 9.3.3.2.2 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.17.3 When to use | 7-89 | 9.3.3.2.3 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.17.4 When not to use | 7-90 | 9.3.3.2.4 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.18 Finger-operated displacement joysticks | 7-90 | 9.3.3.3 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.18.1 Finger-operated displacement joystick specifications | 7-90 | 9.3.3.3.1 | 9-11 |
| 7.4.4.18.2 Mounting | 7-90 | 9.3.3.3.2 | 9-12 |
| 7.4.4.18.3 Movement characteristics | 7-91 | 9.3.3.3.3 | 9-13 |
| 7.4.4.19.1 Usage | 7-90 | 9.3.3.4.1 | 9-13 |
| 7.4.4.19.2 Mounting | 7-91 | 9.3.3.4.2 | 9-13 |
| 7.4.4.19.3 Movement characteristics | 7-91 | 9.3.3.4.3 | 9-13 |
| 7.4.4.20.1 Specifications | 7-92 | 9.3.3.5.1 | 9-14 |
| 7.4.4.20.2 Mounting | 7-92 | 9.3.3.5.2 | 9-14 |
| 7.4.4.21.1 Mounting | 7-92 | 9.3.3.6.1 | 9-14 |
| 7.4.4.22.1 Specifications | 7-92 | 9.3.3.7.1 | 9-14 |
| 7.4.4.22.2 Limb support | 7-93 | 9.3.3.7.2 | 9-15 |
| 7.4.4.22.3 Movement characteristics | 7-93 | 9.3.3.7.3 | 9-15 |
| 7.4.4.22.4 When to use | 7-93 | 9.3.3.7.4 | 9-16 |
| 7.4.4.22.5 Movement of a follower off a display | 7-93 | 9.3.3.7.5 | 9-16 |
| 7.4.4.23.1 Specifications | 7-94 | 9.3.5.1 | 9-17 |
| 7.4.4.23.2 Dynamic characteristics | 7-94 | 9.3.5.2 | 9-17 |
| 7.4.4.23.3 When to use | 7-94 | 9.3.5.3 | 9-17 |
| 7.4.4.24.1 Specifications | 7-94 | 6.1.5.16.1, 2 | 6-51, 52 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|----------------|------|
| 7.4.4.24.2 When not to use | 7-94 | 6.1.5.16.3 | 6-52 |
| 7.4.4.25.1 Dimensions and separation | 7-96 | 6.1.5.17.1 | 6-52 |
| 7.4.4.25.2 Resistance and displacement | 7-96 | 6.1.5.17.2 | 6-52 |
| 7.4.4.25.3 When to use | 7-96 | 6.1.5.17.3 | 6-52 |
| 7.4.4.25.4 Other requirements | 7-96 | 6.1.5.17.5 | 6-52 |
| 7.5.1.1 Use | 7-96 | 6.1.2.1.1 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.2 Size graduation | 7-96 | 6.1.2.1.2 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.3 Demarcation with size graduation | 7-96 | 6.1.2.1.6 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.4 General requirements | 7-96 | 6.1.2.1.7 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.5 Principles of labeling | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.8 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.6 Avoid similar labels | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.9 | 6-11 |
| 7.5.1.7 Meaningful labels | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.10 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.8 Function labels | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.11 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.9 Functional relationship | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.12, 13 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.10 Label mounting | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.14 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.11 Label removal | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.15 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.12 Curved labels | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.16 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.13 Label reflectance | 7-97 | 6.1.2.1.17 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.1.15 Tag mounting | 7-98 | 6.1.2.1.18 | 6-12 |
| 7.5.2.1 Readability | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.1 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.2 No obstruction | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.2 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.3 Position near control or display | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.3 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.4 Above control or display | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.4 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.5 Separate labels | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.5 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.6 Functional grouping | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.6 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.7 Consistent location | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.11 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.8 Hierarchical labeling | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.12 | 6-13 |
| 7.5.2.9 Horizontal orientation | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.13 | 6-14 |
| 7.5.2.10 Preserving readability | 7-98 | 6.1.2.2.15 | 6-14 |
| 7.5.3.1 Character height for viewing distance | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.1 | 6-14 |
| 7.5.3.2 Stroke width in normal illumination | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.2 | 6-14 |
| 7.5.3.3 Stroke width in dim illumination | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.3 | 6-14 |
| 7.5.3.4 Stroke width for transilluminated characters | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.5 | 6-15 |
| 7.5.3.5 Width to height ratios | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.6 | 6-15 |
| 7.5.3.6 Character spacing | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.7 | 6-15 |
| 7.5.3.7 Word spacing | 7-99 | 6.1.2.3.8 | 6-15 |
| 7.5.3.8 Line spacing | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.9 | 6-15 |
| 7.5.3.9 Case of letters | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.10 | 6-15 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|---------------------|-------|
| 7.5.4.1 Contrast | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.13 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.4.2 Dark adaptation | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.15 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.4.3 Style or font | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.16 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.4.4 Confusion between characters | 7-100 | 6.1.2.3.17 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.4.5 Borders | 7-100 | 6.1.2.4 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.5.1 Wording | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.1 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.5.2 Simplicity | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.4 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.5.3 Consistency | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.6 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.5.4 Irrelevant information | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.7 | 6-16 |
| 7.5.5.5 Relevant information | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.8 | 6-17 |
| 7.5.5.6 Pictorial symbols | 7-101 | 6.1.2.4.9 | 6-17 |
| 7.6.1.1 Inserting and removing objects | 7-101 | 6.4.1.1 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.1.2 Opening doors and drawers | 7-103 | 6.4.1.1 | 6-81 |
| | | | |
| 7.6.1.4 Understanding manipulations | 7-104 | 6.4.1.14 | 6-82 |
| 7.6.2.1 Hearing auditory outputs | 7-105 | 8.18.4.2 | 8-193 |
| | | | |
| 7.6.2.3 Location of visual outputs | 7-105 | 5.11.7 | |
| 7.6.2.4 Reaching printed outputs | 7-106 | 5.11.5 | 5-26 |
| | | | |
| 7.6.2.5 Perceiving visual displays | 7-106 | 5.11.7 | |
| 7.6.2.6 Ensuring that visual outputs are not missed | 7-107 | 5.11.2 | 5-25 |
| | | | |
| 7.6.2.8 Avoiding flashing-induced seizures | 7-107 | 5.2.1.2 | 5-8 |
| 7.6.3.1 Manipulating controls | 7-109 | 6.4.1 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.3.3 Minimize force requirements | 7-109 | 6.4.1.2 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.3.4 Unobstructed access | 7-110 | 6.4.1.12 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.3.5 Momentary, not continuous, operation | 7-110 | 6.4.1.13 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.3.6 One manipulation at a time | 7-110 | 6.4.1.5 | 6-81 |
| 7.6.3.7 Unconstrained manipulation | 7-110 | 6.4.1.14 | 6-82 |
| 7.6.3.8 Connecting special alternative input and control devices | 7-111 | 6.4.1.24 | 6-83 |
| 7.6.3.9 Reaching controls | 7-111 | 6.4.1.15 | 6-82 |
| 7.6.3.10 Finding controls | 7-111 | 6.4.1.18, 19 | 6-83 |
| 7.6.3.11 Reading control labels | 7-111 | 6.4.1.26 | 6-83 |
| 7.6.3.12 Understanding control operation | 7-112 | 6.4.1.21, 22, 23 | 6-82 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 7.6.3.13 Determining control status | 7-112 | 6.4.1.32 | 6-83 |
| Chapter 8 | | | |
| 8.1.1.1 Consistent control actions | 8-1 | 8.1.1.1 | 8-1 |
| 8.1.1.2 System matched to user abilities | 8-1 | 8.8.3.5 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.1.3 User control | 8-1 | 8.15.10.2 | 8-17 |
| 8.1.1.4 User control of pace | 8-2 | 8.2.3.6 | 8-8 |
| 8.1.1.5 Explicit user control | 8-2 | 8.1.3.10 | 8-4 |
| 8.1.1.6 Simplicity | 8-2 | 8.1.1.1 | 8-1 |
| 8.1.1.7 Minimal user actions | 8-2 | 8.1.3.7 | 8-4 |
| 8.1.1.8 No repetitive entry of information | 8-2 | 8.1.2.8 | 8-3 |
| 8.1.1.9 User perspective | 8-2 | 8.1.2.2 | 8-2 |
| 8.1.1.10 Transaction wording | 8-2 | 8.1.1.7 | 8-2 |
| 8.1.1.11 User expectations | 8-2 | 8.1.3.6 | 8-4 |
| 8.1.1.12 Minimal memory load | 8-2 | 8.1.1.6 | 8-2 |
| 8.1.1.13 Customized interaction | 8-2 | 8.15.7.5; 8.15.7.6; 8.7.7.11 | 8-168, 8-168; 8-92 |
| 8.1.1.14 Multiple users | 8-3 | 8.15.3.2 | 8-162 |
| 8.1.1.15 Paging and scrolling | 8-3 | 8.2.8.5 | 8-20 |
| 8.1.1.16 Upper-lower case equivalence | 8-3 | 8.7.6.2.14 | 8-90 |
| 8.1.1.17 Canceling or undoing actions | 8-3 | 8.9.1.5 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.1.20 Interactive paradigm | 8-3 | 8.8.1 | 8-94 |
| 8.1.1.21 User control | 8-3 | 8.2.3.6 | 8-8 |
| 8.1.1.22 Immediate feedback | 8-3 | Exhibit 8.15.6.12 | 8-166 |
| 8.1.1.23 Visual cues | 8-4 | 8.7.5.3.6 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.1.24 Prompts | 8-4 | 8.12.1.6 | 8-112 |
| 8.1.1.25 Ignoring user actions | 8-4 | 8.8.1.1.12 | 8-148 |
| 8.1.1.26 Error detection | 8-4 | 8.8.2.1.12 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.1.27 Confirmed destruction | 8-4 | 8.9.1.6 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.2.1 Appropriate system response time | 8-4 | 8.15.6.1 | 8-165 |
| 8.1.2.2 Maximum system response times | 8-4 | 8.15.6.1.2 | 8-165 |
| 8.1.2.3 Variability of system response time | 8-5 | 8.15.6.1.3 | 8-166 |
| 8.1.2.4 Acknowledgement of delayed processing | 8-5 | 8.15.6.1.5 | 8-167 |
| 8.1.2.5 Notification of display completion | 8-6 | 8.15.6.1.6 | 8-167 |
| 8.1.2.6 Response-time-induced keyboard lockout | 8-6 | 8.15.6.2.1 | 8-167 |
| 8.1.2.7 Lockout duration | 8-6 | 8.15.6.2.3 | 8-167 |
| 8.1.2.8 Lockout indication | 8-6 | 8.15.6.2.4 | 8-167 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-------------|-------|
| 8.1.2.9 Lockout override | 8-6 | 8.15.6.2.5 | 8-167 |
| 8.1.3.2.1 Entry acknowledgement | 8-7 | 8.15.11.1.2 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.3.2.2 Periodic feedback | 8-7 | 8.15.8.5 | 8-169 |
| 8.1.3.2.3 Periodic feedback messages | 8-7 | 8.15.8.4 | 8-169 |
| 8.1.3.2.4 Completion of processing | 8-7 | 8.15.8.10 | 8-170 |
| 8.1.3.3.1 System interrupts | 8-7 | 8.15.1.3 | 8-161 |
| 8.1.3.3.2 "Working" indication | 8-7 | 8.15.8.5 | 8-169 |
| 8.1.3.4.1 Availability of status information | 8-8 | 8.15.9.1 | 8-170 |
| 8.1.3.4.2 Status of alarm settings | 8-8 | 8.15.9.2 | 8-170 |
| 8.1.3.4.3 Status of other systems or users | 8-8 | 8.15.9.3 | 8-170 |
| 8.1.3.5.1 Distinctive and consistent alarms | 8-8 | 7.1 | 7-1 |
| 8.1.3.5.2 Acknowledging and terminating alarms | 8-8 | 7.1.2.9 | 7-3 |
| 8.1.3.5.3 Feedback about alarms and alerts | 8-8 | 7.2.9.3 | 7-13 |
| 8.1.3.5.4 Special acknowledgement of critical alarms | 8-8 | 7.1.1.9 | 7-2 |
| 8.1.3.5.5 Alarm reset | 8-8 | 7.2.9.1 | 7-13 |
| 8.1.3.5.6 User setting of alarm parameters | 8-9 | 7.2.9.2 | 7-13 |
| 8.1.3.6.1 Routine feedback | 8-9 | 8.15.10.1 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.3.6.2 User control | 8-9 | 8.15.10.2 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.3.6.3 Clarity of purpose | 8-9 | 8.15.10.3 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.4.1 User interruption of transactions | 8-9 | 8.9.1.1 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.4.2 Stored or entered data | 8-9 | 8.9.1.3 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.4.3 Backup (or Go-back) | 8-9 | 8.9.1.4 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.4 Cancel (or Undo) | 8-9 | 8.9.1.5 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.5 End, Exit, or Stop | 8-9 | 8.9.1.8 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.6 Pause and Continue | 8-9 | 8.9.1.9 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.7 Indicating Pause status | 8-10 | 8.9.1.10 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.8 Restart (or Revert) | 8-10 | 8.9.1.12 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.9 Review | 8-10 | 8.9.1.14 | 8-105 |
| 8.1.4.10 Suspend | 8-10 | 8.9.1.15 | 8-106 |
| 8.1.4.11 Indicating Suspended status | 8-10 | 8.9.1.16 | 8-106 |
| 8.1.5.1.1 User-detected errors | 8-10 | 8.15.11.1.1 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.5.1.2 Appropriate response to all entries | 8-10 | 8.15.11.1.2 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.5.1.3 System detection of error type | 8-10 | 8.15.11.1.3 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.5.1.4 Fast error detection | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.4 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.5.1.5 Immediate data correction | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.5 | 8-171 |
| 8.1.5.1.6 Prompting command correction | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.6 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.7 Display duration | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.7 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.8 Enter action for corrections | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.8 | 8-172 |

| | | | |
|---|------|------------------|-------|
| 8.1.5.1.9 Return to main interaction | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.1 0 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.10 User confirmation of destructive actions | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.1 1 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.11 Flexible "go back" for error correction | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.1 3 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.12 Undo control action | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.1 4 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.1.13 Error recovery | 8-11 | 8.15.11.1.1 6 | 8-172 |
| 8.1.5.2.1 System-detected need for help | 8-11 | 8.15.11.2.1 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.2 Confirmation messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.2 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.3 Multilevel messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.3 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.4 Multiple errors | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.4 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.5 Nondisruptive error messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.5 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.6 Coding of warning messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.6 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.7 Content of error messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.7 | 8-173 |
| 8.1.5.2.8 Wording of error messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.9 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.2.9 Tone of error messages | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.1 1 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.2.10 Correcting errors | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.1 2 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.2.11 Cursor placement | 8-12 | 8.15.11.2.1 3 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.2.12 Instructions and error messages | 8-13 | 8.15.11.2.1 4 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.1 Command editing | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.1 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.2 Command correction prompting | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.2 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.3 Unrecognized commands | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.3 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.4 Errors in stacked commands | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.5 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.5 Partial execution of stacked commands | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.6 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.5.3.6 Stacked command execution | 8-13 | 8.15.11.3.7 | 8-174 |
| 8.1.6.1 User-specified transaction timing | 8-13 | 8.12.1.1 | 8-112 |
| 8.1.6.2 User memory load | 8-14 | 8.12.1.2 | 8-112 |
| 8.1.6.3 Prompting control entries | 8-14 | 8.12.1.5 | 8-112 |
| 8.1.6.4 List of basic control options | 8-14 | 8.12.1.7 | 8-112 |
| 8.1.6.5 Appropriate specific options | 8-14 | 8.12.1.8 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.6 Option wording | 8-14 | 8.12.1.9 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.7 Option presentation | 8-14 | 8.12.1.10 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.8 Option code display | 8-14 | 8.12.1.11 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.9 Displaying control defaults | 8-14 | 8.12.1.12 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.10 Initial cursor position for pointing devices | 8-14 | 8.12.1.13 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.11 Initial cursor position for keyboards | 8-14 | 8.12.1.14 | 8-113 |

| | | | |
|---|------|--------------|-------|
| 8.1.6.12 Consistent Continue option | 8-15 | 8.12.1.15 | 8-113 |
| 8.1.6.13 Options at completion of a transaction | 8-15 | 8.12.1.18 | 8-114 |
| 8.1.6.14 Command stacking | 8-15 | 8.12.2.1 | 8-114 |
| 8.1.6.15 Punctuation of stacked commands | 8-15 | 8.12.2.4 | 8-115 |
| 8.1.6.16 User-defined stacks (macros) | 8-15 | 8.12.2.7 | 8-115 |
| 8.1.7.1 Abbreviations | 8-15 | 8.2.5.4.1 | 8-13 |
| 8.1.7.2 Use of abbreviations | 8-15 | 8.2.5.4.3 | 8-14 |
| 8.1.7.3 Definitions of abbreviations | 8-15 | 8.2.5.4.10 | 8-14 |
| 8.1.7.4 New abbreviations | 8-16 | 8.2.5.4.9 | 8-14 |
| 8.1.8.1 Selection of interaction type | 8-16 | 8.7.1.1 | 8-69 |
| 8.1.8.2 Distinctive display of control information | 8-18 | 8.7.1.2. | 8-69 |
| 8.1.8.3 Hierarchical levels | 8-18 | 8.7.2 | 8-69 |
| 8.1.9.1 Singular presentation of questions | 8-19 | 8.7.3.2 | 8-70 |
| 8.1.9.2 Display of interrelated answers | 8-19 | 8.7.3.4 | 8-70 |
| 8.1.9.3 Sequence compatibility | 8-19 | 8.7.3.5 | 8-70 |
| 8.1.10.1 Consistency | 8-19 | 8.7.4.1 | 8-71 |
| 8.1.10.2 Default entries | 8-19 | 8.7.4.2 | 8-71 |
| 8.1.10.3 Default listing | 8-19 | 8.7.4.3 | 8-71 |
| 8.1.11.1.1 Menu titles | 8-20 | 8.7.5.2.1 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.1.2 Consistent style | 8-20 | 8.7.5.14 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.1.3 Consistent wording and ordering | 8-20 | 8.7.5.15 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.1.4 Consistent with command language | 8-20 | 8.7.5.5.3 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.1.5 Response time and display rate vs. menu length | 8-20 | 8.7.5.1.8 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.1.6 Number of options | 8-20 | 8.7.5.3.4 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.11.1.7 Display of all options | 8-20 | 8.7.5.3.5 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.11.1.8 Distinguishing unavailable options | 8-20 | 8.7.5.3.6 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.11.1.9 Distinguishing types of options | 8-20 | 8.7.5.4.1 | 8-74 |
| 8.1.11.1.10 Instructions | 8-21 | 8.7.5.1.6 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.1.11 Shortcuts for experienced users | 8-21 | 8.7.6.1.9 | 8-88 |
| 8.1.11.1.12 Stacking menu selections | 8-21 | 8.7.6.1.1 | 8-88 |
| 8.1.11.1.13 Menus distinct from other displayed information | 8-21 | 8.7.5.1.3 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.2.1 Presentation of options | 8-21 | 8.7.5.10.11 | 8-79 |
| 8.1.11.2.2 Consistent menus and options | 8-21 | 8.7.5.9.3, 4 | 8-78 |
| 8.1.11.2.3 Logical grouping of menu options | 8-21 | 8.7.5.6.5 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.2.4 Ordering groups of options | 8-21 | 8.7.5.6.6 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.2.5 Ordering options within a menu or group | 8-21 | 8.7.5.6.4 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.2.6 Numbering menu options | 8-22 | 8.7.6.2.8 | 8-90 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-------------|------|
| 8.1.11.2.7 Distinguishing unavailable options | 8-22 | 8.7.5.3.6 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.11.3.1 When to use | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.1 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.2 Organizing and labeling hierarchical menus | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.3 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.3 Consistent design and use | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.4 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.4 Minimum number of levels | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.5 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.5 Easy selection of important options | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.6 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.6 Indicating current position in menu structure | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.7 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.7 Hierarchical menus in graphical user interfaces | 8-22 | 8.7.5.11.8 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.8 Top level menu | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.9 | 8-81 |
| 8.1.11.3.9 Organization of a system-level menu | 8-23 | 8.7.5.6.6 | 8-76 |
| 8.1.11.3.10 Return to system-level menu | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.11 | 8-82 |
| 8.1.11.3.11 Return to next higher level | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.12 | 8-82 |
| 8.1.11.3.12 Lower level menus | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.13 | 8-82 |
| 8.1.11.3.13 Bypassing menu selections | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.14 | 8-82 |
| 8.1.11.3.14 Software navigation aids | 8-23 | 8.7.5.11.15 | 8-82 |
| 8.1.11.4.1 When to use | 8-23 | 8.7.5.7.1 | 8-76 |
| 8.1.11.4.2 Visibility of menu bar options | 8-23 | 8.7.5.7.3 | 8-76 |
| 8.1.11.5.1 When to use | 8-23 | 8.7.5.10.1 | 8-78 |
| 8.1.11.5.2 Consistent location | 8-24 | 8.7.5.10.2 | 8-78 |
| 8.1.11.6.2 Pop-up menu location | 8-24 | 8.7.5.14.6 | 8-85 |
| 8.1.11.6.3 Selecting an option using a pointing device | 8-24 | 8.7.5.14.8 | 8-85 |
| 8.1.11.7.1 Equivalence of input devices | 8-24 | 8.7.6.1.1 | 8-87 |
| 8.1.11.7.2 Initial cursor position for pointing devices | 8-24 | 8.7.6.1.5 | 8-87 |
| 8.1.11.7.3 Initial cursor position for keyboards | 8-25 | 8.7.6.1.2 | 8-87 |
| 8.1.11.7.4 Feedback for menu selection | 8-25 | 8.7.5.3.9 | 8-74 |
| 8.1.11.7.5 Abbreviated entries | 8-25 | 8.7.6.1.10 | 8-88 |
| 8.1.11.7.6 Menu selection by pointing | 8-25 | 8.7.6.1.3 | 8-87 |
| 8.1.11.7.7 Size of selectable area | 8-25 | 8.7.6.1.6 | 8-87 |
| 8.1.11.7.8 Two-action activation | 8-25 | 8.7.6.1.8 | 8-88 |
| 8.1.11.7.9 Number of selections per menu | 8-25 | 8.7.5.3.3 | 8-73 |
| 8.1.11.8.1 Wording of options | 8-25 | 8.7.5.5.2 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.8.2 Options as commands | 8-25 | 8.7.5.5.1 | 8-75 |
| 8.1.11.8.3 Titles for groups of options | 8-26 | 8.7.5.2.2 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.8.4 Appearance of group titles | 8-26 | 8.7.5.2.3 | 8-72 |
| 8.1.11.9.1 Conveyed meaning of coding | 8-26 | 8.7.6.2.3 | 8-89 |
| 8.1.11.9.2 Consistent coding | 8-26 | 8.7.6.2.10 | 8-90 |
| 8.1.11.9.3 Letter vs numeric codes | 8-26 | 8.7.6.2.7 | 8-90 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------|------|
| 8.1.11.9.4 Numeric coding | 8-26 | 8.7.6.2.8 | 8-90 |
| 8.1.11.9.5 Displaying option codes | 8-26 | 8.7.6.2.10 | 8-90 |
| 8.1.12.1 Single function | 8-26 | 8.7.7.2 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.2 Consistency within an application | 8-26 | 8.7.7.3 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.3 Consistency across applications | 8-26 | 8.7.7.4 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.4 Feedback | 8-27 | 8.7.7.5 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.5 "Soft" function keys | 8-27 | 8.7.7.6 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.6 "Soft" function key activation | 8-27 | 8.7.7.7 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.7 Disabling of unused function keys | 8-27 | 8.7.7.8 | 8-91 |
| 8.1.12.8 Easy return to base-level functions | 8-27 | 8.7.7.10 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.9 User-defined functions (macros) | 8-27 | 8.7.7.11 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.10 Single key operation for continuously-available functions | 8-27 | 8.7.7.12 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.11 Frequently-used functions | 8-28 | 8.7.7.13 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.12 Single key press | 8-28 | 8.7.7.15,16 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.14 Relationship of sets of functions | 8-28 | 8.7.7.17 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.15 Labeling single-function keys | 8-28 | 8.7.7.18 | 8-92 |
| 8.1.12.16 Labeling multifunction keys | 8-28 | 8.7.7.19 | 8-93 |
| 8.1.12.17 Indicating status | 8-28 | 8.7.6.2.23 | 8-93 |
| 8.1.12.18 Labeling of menu items selectable with function keys | 8-28 | 8.7.6.2.24 | 8-93 |
| 8.1.12.19 Importance and frequency of use | 8-28 | 8.7.6.2.14 | 8-93 |
| 8.1.12.20 Safeguarding | 8-29 | 8.7.6.2.25 | 8-93 |
| 8.1.13.1 Functional command language | 8-29 | 8.8.2.2. | 8-95 |
| 8.1.13.2 Consistent syntax | 8-29 | 8.8.2.3 | 8-95 |
| 8.1.13.3 Complexity of command language | 8-29 | 8.8.2.4 | 8-95 |
| 8.1.13.4 Layered command language | 8-29 | 8.8.2.5 | 8-95 |
| 8.1.13.5 Command stacking | 8-29 | 8.8.2.6 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.6 Command entry area | 8-29 | 8.8.2.7 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.7 Distinctive working of commands | 8-29 | 8.8.2.8 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.8 Consistent wording of commands | 8-29 | 8.8.2.9 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.9 Familiar wording | 8-29 | 8.8.2.10 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.10 Abbreviation of commands | 8-30 | 8.8.2.11 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.11 Selection of commands | 8-30 | 8.8.2.12 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.12 Alternate wording | 8-30 | 8.8.2.13 | 8-96 |
| 8.1.13.13 "Word" length | 8-30 | 8.8.2.15 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.14 Characters | 8-30 | 8.8.2.16 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.15 Punctuation | 8-30 | 8.8.2.19 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.16 Blank spaces | 8-30 | 8.8.2.21 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.17 Spelling errors | 8-30 | 8.8.2.14 | 8-96 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------------------------------|-------|
| 8.1.13.18 Editing commands | 8-30 | 8.8.2.22 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.19 Execution | 8-30 | 8.8.2.23 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.20 Confirmation of a command | 8-30 | 8.8.2.25 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.13.21 Unrecognized commands | 8-30 | 8.8.2.26 | 8-97 |
| 8.1.14.1.1 Ease of use | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.2 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.2 Interactive | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.3 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.3 Natural organization of data | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.4 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.4 Task-oriented queries | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.5 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.5 User assistance | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.6 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.6 Large-scale retrieval confirmation | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.7 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.1.7 Logical combination queries | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.9 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.1.8 Subsequent queries | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.10 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.1.9 Flexible queries | 8-31 | 8.8.3.1.11 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.1.10 Error detection and correction | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.12 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.1.11 Formats matched to user needs | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.14 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.1.12 User preferences | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.16 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.2.2 Relevant information only | 8-32 | 8.8.3.2.1 | 8-101 |
| 8.1.14.2.3 Frequently-used information | 8-32 | 8.8.3.2.2 | 8-101 |
| 8.1.14.3.1 Importance of search terms | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.17 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.3.2 Redisplay | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.18 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.3.3 Spelling and word variants | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.13 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.3.4 Punctuation | 8-32 | 8.8.3.1.19 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.3.5 Word roots | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.20 | 8-99 |
| 8.1.14.3.6 Exceptions | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.21 | 8-100 |
| 8.1.14.3.7 Appearance of output | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.22 | 8-100 |
| 8.1.14.3.8 Assisting the user | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.6 | 8-98 |
| 8.1.14.4.1 Commands | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.21 | 8-100 |
| 8.1.14.4.2 Minimal user effort | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.25 | 8-100 |
| 8.1.14.4.3 Messages | 8-33 | 8.14.4 | 8-146 |
| 8.1.14.4.4 Ease-of-use features | 8-33 | 8.8.3.1.26, 27, 28, 29, 30 | 8-100 |
| 8.1.14.5.1 Searching operations | 8-33 | 8.8.3.3.1 | 8-101 |
| 8.1.14.5.2 Control operations | 8-34 | 8.8.3.3.2 | 8-101 |
| 8.1.14.5.3 Query formulation operations | 8-34 | 8.8.3.3.3 | 8-102 |
| 8.1.14.5.4 Abbreviations | 8-34 | 8.8.3.3.4 | 8-102 |
| 8.1.14.5.5 Search time feedback | 8-35 | 8.8.3.3.5 | 8-102 |
| 8.1.14.5.6 Additional operations | 8-35 | 8.8.3.3.7 | 8-103 |

| | | | |
|--|------|----------------|-------|
| 8.1.14.6.1 Accommodating users differing in experience | 8-35 | 8.8.3.4.1 | 8-103 |
| 8.1.14.6.2 Changing levels | 8-35 | 8.8.3.4.1 | 8-103 |
| 8.1.14.6.3 Context-sensitive help | 8-36 | 8.8.3.4.2 | 8-103 |
| 8.1.14.6.4 Novice level | 8-36 | 8.8.3.4.3 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.14.6.5 Prompting novices | 8-36 | 8.8.3.4.4 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.14.6.6 Commands for novices | 8-36 | 8.8.3.4.5 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.14.6.7 Commands for experts | 8-36 | 8.8.3.4.6 | 8-104 |
| 8.1.15.1.1 Resolution | 8-36 | 8.13.3.2 | 8-116 |
| 8.1.15.1.2 Description | 8-36 | 8.13.3.3 | 8-116 |
| 8.1.15.1.3 Labels | 8-36 | 8.13.3.4,.5 | 8-116 |
| 8.1.15.1.4 Consistency | 8-36 | 8.13.3.6 | 8-116 |
| 8.1.15.1.5 Uniqueness of icons | 8-36 | 8.13.3.3.10 | 8-117 |
| 8.1.15.1.6 Icon design | 8-36 | 8.1.3.3.7 | 8-116 |
| 8.1.15.1.7 Manipulation of icons | 8-37 | 8.13.3.15 | 8-117 |
| 8.1.15.1.8 Icon menu | 8-37 | 8.14.6.2.7 | 8-155 |
| 8.1.15.1.9 Using the icon menu | 8-37 | 8.14.6.2.8 | 8-155 |
| 8.1.15.1.10 Restoring the window | 8-37 | 8.14.6.4.3 | 8-157 |
| 8.1.15.1.11 Location of icons | 8-37 | 8.14.6.2.10 | 8-155 |
| 8.1.15.1.12 User preferences | 8-37 | 8.13.3.17 | 8-117 |
| 8.1.15.1.13 Moving icons | 8-37 | 8.13.3.19 | 8-117 |
| 8.1.15.2.1 Consistent appearance | 8-37 | 8.13.5.1 | 8-119 |
| 8.1.15.2.2 Labels | 8-37 | 8.13.5.3 | 8-119 |
| 8.1.15.2.3 Consistent labels | 8-38 | 8.13.5.4 | 8-119 |
| 8.1.15.2.4 Text labels | 8-38 | 8.13.5.5 | 8-119 |
| 8.1.15.2.6 Activating a push button | 8-38 | 8.13.5.8 | 8-120 |
| 8.1.15.2.7 Default push buttons | 8-38 | 8.13.5.12 | 8-120 |
| 8.1.15.3.1 When to use | 8-38 | 8.1.3.6.1 | 8-121 |
| 8.1.15.3.2 Selecting a radio button | 8-38 | 8.13.6.3,.4,.5 | 8-121 |
| 8.1.15.3.3 Selected button highlighted | 8-38 | 8.13.6.8 | 8-121 |
| 8.1.15.4.1 When to use | 8-39 | 8.13.7.1 | 8-122 |
| 8.1.15.4.2 Selecting check boxes | 8-39 | 8.13.7.3 | 8-122 |
| 8.1.15.5.1 Components of a slider | 8-39 | 8.13.9.2 | 8-124 |
| 8.1.15.5.2 Readout | 8-39 | 8.13.9.3 | 8-124 |
| 8.1.15.5.3 Slider operation | 8-40 | 8.13.9.4 | 8-124 |
| 8.1.15.5.4 Labeling sliders | 8-40 | 8.13.9.5 | 8-124 |
| 8.2.1.1.1 Simplicity | 8-40 | 8.1.1.1 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.1.2 Logical grouping | 8-40 | 8.7.5.6.5 | 8-75 |

| | | | |
|--|------|----------|------|
| 8.2.1.1.3 Minimal movement | 8-40 | 8.1.3.7 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.1.4 What information to display | 8-40 | 8.1.3.9 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.1.5 Minimal information density | 8-40 | 8.1.1.2 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.1.6 Screen density | 8-41 | 8.1.1.3 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.1.7 Integrated information | 8-41 | 8.1.1.6 | 8-2 |
| 8.2.1.1.8 Directly usable form | 8-41 | 8.1.1.4 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.2.1 Consistent screen structure | 8-41 | 8.1.4.1 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.2.2 Consistent screen elements | 8-41 | 8.1.4.2 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.2.3 Input prompts | 8-41 | 8.1.4.3 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.2.4 Instructions and error messages | 8-41 | 8.1.4.4 | 8-1 |
| 8.2.1.3.1 Maintaining context | 8-41 | 8.1.2.2 | 8-2 |
| 8.2.1.3.2 Highlighting | 8-41 | 8.1.2.3 | 8-2 |
| 8.2.1.3.3 Display of context information | 8-42 | 8.1.2.4 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.4 Distinctive position and format | 8-42 | 8.1.2.5 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.5 Operational mode | 8-42 | 8.1.2.6 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.6 Current context indication | 8-42 | 8.1.2.7 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.7 Context-dependent actions | 8-42 | 8.1.2.8 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.8 Action history | 8-42 | 8.1.2.9 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.3.9 Control parameters display | 8-42 | 8.1.2.10 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.4.1 Title | 8-42 | 8.1.3.1 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.4.2 Other reserved areas | 8-42 | 8.1.3.2 | 8-3 |
| 8.2.1.4.3 Layout of screen elements | 8-43 | 8.1.3.8 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.4.4 Minimal visual competition | 8-43 | 8.1.3.3 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.4.5 Arrangement of screen elements | 8-43 | 8.1.3.4 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.4.6 Location of displayed instructions | 8-43 | 8.1.3.5 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.4.7 Use of contrasting features | 8-43 | 8.6.1.2 | 8-54 |
| 8.2.1.4.8 Abbreviations | 8-43 | 8.2.5.4 | 8-13 |
| 8.2.1.5.1 Breaking up large blocks of text | 8-43 | 8.2.5.19 | 8-12 |
| 8.2.1.5.2 Lists | 8-43 | 8.2.9.1 | 8-21 |
| 8.2.1.5.3 Order of information | 8-43 | 8.1.3.15 | 8-5 |
| 8.2.1.5.4 Primary viewing area | 8-43 | 8.1.3.13 | 8-5 |
| 8.2.1.6.1 Stationary text | 8-44 | 8.2.8.5 | 8-21 |
| 8.2.1.6.2 Paging | 8-44 | 8.2.8.1 | 8-20 |
| 8.2.1.6.3 Labeling pages | 8-44 | 8.2.8.3 | 8-20 |
| 8.2.1.7.1 Initial display | 8-44 | 8.1.5.1 | 8-6 |
| 8.2.1.7.2 Starting point | 8-44 | 8.1.5.2 | 8-6 |
| 8.2.1.8.1 Minimizing the user's short-term memory load | 8-44 | 8.1.1.6 | 8-2 |
| 8.2.1.8.2 Selecting a mutually exclusive option | 8-44 | 8.7.5.12 | 8-71 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------|-------|
| 8.2.1.8.3 Selecting nonmutually exclusive options | 8-44 | 8.13.7 | 8-122 |
| 8.2.1.8.4 Menus | 8-45 | 8.7.5.1.1. | 8-71 |
| 8.2.1.8.5 Pop-up menus | 8-45 | 8.7.5.14 | 8-84 |
| 8.2.1.9.1 Matching window layout to task | 8-45 | 8.1.3.6 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.9.2 Matching window layout to users' "Natural" patterns | 8-45 | 8.1.3.8 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.9.3 Minimal user effort | 8-45 | 8.1.3.7 | 8-4 |
| 8.2.1.10.1 Location by importance | 8-45 | 8.1.3.14 | 8-5 |
| 8.2.1.10.2 Task-critical information | 8-45 | 8.1.3.12 | 8-5 |
| 8.2.1.11.1 Visual coding of critical information | 8-45 | 8.6.1.2 | 8-54 |
| 8.2.1.11.2 Flash coding | 8-46 | 8.6.11.1 | 8-67 |
| 8.2.1.11.3 Audible coding of critical information | 8-46 | 8.14.4.5.4 | 8-148 |
| 8.2.1.12.1 User control | 8-46 | 8.5.1.4 | 8-53 |
| 8.2.1.12.2 Rate of updating | 8-46 | 8.5.1.2 | 8-53 |
| 8.2.1.12.3 Dynamic information in frozen, inactive, and iconized windows | 8-46 | 8.5.1.7 | 8-35 |
| 8.2.2.1.1 Screen saver | 8-46 | 8.15.2.1 | 8-162 |
| 8.2.2.2.1 Log on screen | 8-47 | 8.15.3.5 | 8-162 |
| 8.2.2.2.2 Log on prompts | 8-47 | 8.15.3.7 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.4 Error messages | 8-47 | 8.15.3.9 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.5 Completion of log on | 8-47 | 8.15.3.10 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.6 System log off | 8-47 | 8.15.3.11 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.7 Prompting to exit an application or save entries | 8-47 | 8.15.3.12 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.8 Confirming a log off | 8-47 | 8.15.3.13 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.2.9 Completion of log off | 8-47 | 8.15.3.14 | 8-163 |
| 8.2.2.3.1 Log on | 8-47 | 8.15.4.1 | 8-164 |
| 8.2.2.3.2 Log off | 8-47 | 8.15.4.2 | 8-164 |
| 8.2.2.3.3 Confirming an exit | 8-48 | 8.15.4.3 | 8-164 |
| 8.2.2.3.4 Preserving unfinished work | 8-48 | 8.15.4.4 | 8-164 |
| 8.2.2.3.5 Completion of log off | 8-48 | 8.15.4.5 | 8-164 |
| 8.2.3.1 Capitalization | 8-48 | 8.2.5.8 | 8-18 |
| 8.2.3.2 Capitalization of phrases for emphasis | 8-48 | 8.2.5.8.1 | 8-15 |
| 8.2.3.3 Spacing between characters | 8-48 | 8.2.5.6.1 | 8-15 |
| 8.2.3.4 Spacing between words | 8-48 | 8.2.5.6.2 | 8-15 |
| 8.2.3.5 Spacing between lines | 8-48 | 8.2.5.6.3 | 8-15 |
| 8.2.3.6 Spacing between paragraphs | 8-49 | 8.2.5.6.4 | 8-15 |
| 8.2.3.7 Minimum character height | 8-49 | 8.2.5.6.6 | 8-16 |
| 8.2.3.8 Character width | 8-49 | 8.2.5.6.10 | 8-16 |
| 8.2.3.9 Stroke width | 8-49 | 8.2.5.6.14 | 8-17 |

| | | | |
|---|------|--------------|-------|
| 8.2.3.10 Minimum dot matrix | 8-49 | 8.2.5.6.15 | 8-17 |
| 8.2.4.1.1 General principles | 8-50 | 8.6.2.1 | 8-55 |
| 8.2.4.1.2 When to use color | 8-50 | 8.6.2.1.1 | 8-55 |
| 8.2.4.1.3 Constraints on the use of color | 8-50 | 8.6.2.2 | 8-56 |
| 8.2.4.1.5 Colors for infrequently used information | 8-51 | 8.6.2.2.6 | 8-57 |
| 8.2.4.1.6 Colors for action and status | 8-51 | 8.6.2.4.4 | 8-59 |
| 8.2.4.1.7 Consistent use | 8-51 | 8.6.2.4.2 | 8-60 |
| 8.2.4.1.8 One meaning per color | 8-51 | 8.6.2.4.1 | 8-59 |
| 8.2.4.1.9 Consistent with conventions | 8-51 | 8.6.2.4.3 | 8-59 |
| 8.2.4.1.10 Number of colors to use | 8-51 | 8.6.2.7.1. | 8-62 |
| 8.2.4.1.11 Maximum number of colors | 8-51 | 8.6.2.7.3 | 8-62 |
| 8.2.4.1.12 Additional colors | 8-51 | 8.6.2.7.4 | 8-62 |
| 8.2.4.1.13 Adjacent colors | 8-51 | 8.6.2.5.5, 6 | 8-60 |
| 8.2.4.1.14 Color and ambient illumination | 8-52 | 8.6.2.2.8 | 8-57 |
| 8.2.4.1.15 Color key | 8-52 | 8.6.2.8.1 | 8-62 |
| 8.2.4.1.16 Colors at the periphery of large screen displays | 8-52 | 8.6.2.3.2 | 8-58 |
| 8.2.4.1.17 Limiting user color settings | 8-52 | 8.6.2.9.1 | 8-61 |
| 8.2.4.1.18 Easy return to default color scheme | 8-52 | 8.6.2.9.2 | 8-62 |
| 8.2.4.1.19 Portable applications | 8-52 | 8.6.2.9.3 | 8-63 |
| 8.2.4.1.20 Text-background contrast | 8-52 | 8.6.2.6.2. | 8-61 |
| 8.2.4.1.21 Green, yellow, and red | 8-53 | 8.6.2.2.10 | 8-57 |
| 8.2.4.1.22 Blue | 8-53 | 8.6.2.2.12c | 8-58 |
| 8.2.4.1.23 Colors for comparison | 8-53 | 8.6.2.5.4 | 8-60 |
| 8.2.4.1.24 Small areas | 8-53 | 8.6.2.1.9 | 8-56 |
| 8.2.4.1.25 Highlighting | 8-53 | 8.6.3.6. | 8-64 |
| 8.2.4.2.1 When to use | 8-53 | 8.6.2.2.3 | 8-56 |
| 8.2.4.2.2 Ordered coding | 8-54 | 8.6.2.2.4 | 8-56 |
| 8.2.4.3.1 Code, symbol, not text | 8-54 | 8.6.2.6.5 | 8-63 |
| 8.2.4.3.2 Symbol size | 8-54 | 8.6.3.3 | 8-16 |
| 8.2.4.3.3 Symbol brightness | 8-54 | 8.13.10.2.4 | 8-63 |
| 8.2.4.3.4 Refresh rate | 8-54 | 8.13.10.2.4 | 8-127 |
| 8.3.1.1 Hardware limitations on the use of windowing | 8-55 | 8.14.1.1 | 8-132 |
| 8.3.1.2 User-specified windows | 8-55 | 8.14.1.2 | 8-133 |
| 8.3.1.3 Number of allowable open windows | 8-55 | 8.14.1.3 | 8-133 |
| 8.3.2.1.1 "Primary" windows | 8-55 | 8.14.3.1.1 | 8-140 |
| 8.3.2.1.2 "Secondary" windows | 8-56 | 8.14.3.1.7 | 8-141 |
| 8.3.2.1.3 Secondary window constraints | 8-56 | 8.14.3.1.9 | 8-141 |

| | | | |
|--|------|--------------|-------|
| 8.3.2.1.4 Window placement | 8-56 | 8.14.3.1.11 | 8-141 |
| 8.3.2.2.1 Description | 8-56 | 8.14.2.1.1 | 8-134 |
| 8.3.2.3.1 Description | 8-56 | 8.14.2.2.1 | 8-135 |
| 8.3.2.4.3 Selecting an option in a menu bar using its mnemonic | 8-57 | 8.7.5.7.9 | 8-77 |
| 8.3.2.4.4 Leaving the menu bar | 8-57 | 8.12.10.2.9 | 8-128 |
| 8.3.2.4.5 Displaying a pull-down menu | 8-57 | 8.7.5.10.20 | 8-80 |
| 8.3.3.1.1 Consistent and distinctive | 8-57 | 8.13.1.1 | 8-115 |
| 8.3.3.1.2 Distinct from other objects | 8-58 | 8.13.1.2 | 8-115 |
| 8.3.3.2.2 When to use | 8-58 | 8.2.11.3.1 | 8-25 |
| 8.3.3.2.3 Scrolling fields | 8-58 | 8.2.11.3.2 | 8-25 |
| 8.3.3.3.1 When to use | 8-58 | 8.7.5.13.1 | 8-83 |
| 8.3.3.3.2 Scroll bar components | 8-58 | 8.7.5.13.3,4 | 8-83 |
| 8.3.4.1.1 Open window | 8-59 | 8.14.5.1.1 | 8-151 |
| 8.3.4.1.2 Closed window | 8-59 | 8.14.5.2.1 | 8-152 |
| 8.3.4.1.3 Closing a primary window | 8-59 | 8.14.5.2.2. | 8-152 |
| 8.3.4.1.4 Closing a secondary window | 8-59 | 8.14.5.2.4 | 8-152 |
| 8.3.4.1.5 Iconized windows | 8-59 | 8.14.6.2.1 | 8-155 |
| 8.3.4.1.6 Restoring an iconized window | 8-59 | 8.14.6.4.3 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.4.3.1 One input focus | 8-60 | 8.14.5.4.1 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.2 User assignable input focus | 8-60 | 8.14.5.4.2 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.3 Assigning input focus with a pointing device | 8-60 | 8.14.5.4.3 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.4 Assigning input focus with the keyboard | 8-60 | 8.14.5.4.5 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.5 Single object focus | 8-60 | 8.14.5.4.6 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.6 Location cursor | 8-61 | 8.14.5.4.7 | 8-153 |
| 8.3.4.3.7 Assigning input focus to an object | 8-61 | 8.14.5.4.11 | 8-154 |
| 8.3.4.3.8 Moving input focus to an object with a pointing device | 8-61 | 8.14.5.4.10 | 8-154 |
| 8.3.4.4.1 Primary window mode | 8-61 | 8.14.3.1.1 | 8-141 |
| 8.3.4.4.2 Secondary window mode | 8-61 | 8.14.3.1.7 | 8-142 |
| 8.3.5.1 Restoring window to default size | 8-62 | 8.14.6.4.5 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.5.2 Move | 8-62 | 8.14.6.6.1 | 8-158 |
| 8.3.5.3 Moving a window with a pointing device | 8-62 | 8.14.6.6.3 | 8-158 |
| 8.3.5.4 Moving a window using the keyboard | 8-62 | 8.14.6.4.4 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.5.5 Resize | 8-62 | 8.14.6.7.1 | 8-158 |
| 8.3.5.6 Resizing a window using a pointing device | 8-62 | 8.14.6.7.5 | 8-158 |
| 8.3.5.8 Iconize | 8-63 | 8.14.6.2.4 | 8-156 |
| 8.3.5.9 Iconizing a window using a pointing device | 8-63 | 8.14.6.2.5 | 8-156 |
| 8.3.5.10 Iconizing a window using the keyboard | 8-63 | 8.14.6.2.6 | 8-156 |

| | | | |
|---|------|--------------------|-------|
| 8.3.5.11 Restoring an icon using a pointing device | 8-63 | 8.14.6.4.1 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.5.12 Restoring an icon using the keyboard | 8-63 | 8.14.6.4.4 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.5.13 Maximize | 8-63 | 8.14.6.3.3 | 8-156 |
| 8.3.5.14 Close | 8-63 | 8.14.6.5.2 | 8-157 |
| 8.3.5.15 Next window | 8-64 | 8.14.5.2.3 | 8-151 |
| 8.3.5.16 Previous window | 8-64 | 8.14.5.2.3 | 8-151 |
| 8.3.5.17 Moving and copying objects | 8-64 | 8.14.6.8.1 | 8-159 |
| 8.3.6.1 Software navigation aids | 8-64 | 8.14.7.1.1 | 8-160 |
| 8.3.6.2 Open window map | 8-64 | 8.14.7.1.2 | 8-160 |
| 8.3.6.3 Active designation from open window map | 8-64 | 8.14.7.1.8 | 8-160 |
| 8.3.6.4 Expanded window explanation of open window map | 8-64 | 8.14.7.1.9 | 8-161 |
| 8.3.6.5 Window forward function with window map | 8-65 | 8.14.7.1.10 | 8-161 |
| 8.3.7.1.2 Wording of options | 8-65 | 8.7.5.5 | 8-75 |
| 8.3.7.2.1 Mnemonics | 8-65 | 8.7.5.7.9 | 8-77 |
| 8.3.7.2.2 Single letter mnemonic | 8-65 | 8.7.6.2.2 | 8-89 |
| 8.3.7.2.5 Keyboard accelerators | 8-66 | 8.7.6.2.12 | 8-90 |
| 8.3.7.2.6 Selecting an option in a menu using its accelerator | 8-66 | 8.7.6.2.13 | 8-90 |
| 8.3.7.2.7 Case sensitivity of mnemonics and keyboard accelerators | 8-66 | 8.7.6.2.14 | 8-90 |
| 8.3.7.2.9 Displaying mnemonics and accelerators | 8-66 | 8.7.6.2.5 | 8-89 |
| 8.3.7.3.1 Title | 8-66 | 8.7.5.10.4 | 8-78 |
| 8.3.7.3.2 Presentation of options | 8-67 | 8.7.5.10.11 | 8-77 |
| 8.3.7.3.6 Number of options | 8-67 | 8.7.5.10.10 | 8-79 |
| 8.3.7.3.7 Distinguishing unavailable options | 8-67 | 8.7.5.10.10 .19 | 8-80 |
| 8.3.7.4.2 Order of options | 8-68 | 8.7.5.13.4 | 8-83 |
| 8.3.7.4.4 Display of all options in a scrolling menu | 8-68 | 8.7.5.13.7 | 8-83 |
| 8.3.7.4.5 Search capability | 8-68 | 8.7.5.13.9 | 8-84 |
| 8.3.8.1 Text cursor | 8-68 | 8.13.10.2.1 | 8-126 |
| 8.3.8.2 Text cursor location | 8-68 | 8.13.10.2.7 | 8-126 |
| 8.3.8.3 Moving the text cursor | 8-69 | 8.13.10.1.3 | 8-126 |
| 8.3.8.4 Text cursor display | 8-69 | 8.13.10.2.1 1 | 8-127 |
| 8.3.8.5 Pointer visibility | 8-69 | 8.13.10.5.4 | 8-129 |
| 8.3.8.6 Insert mode | 8-69 | 8.2.4.1.7 | 8-9 |
| 8.3.8.7 Manipulating text | 8-69 | 8.2.4.1.10 | 8-9 |
| 8.3.8.8 Text entry | 8-69 | 8.2.4.1.11 | 8-9 |
| 8.3.9.1.1 System access through log on process | 8-69 | 8.15.3.1 | 8-162 |
| 8.3.9.1.2 Log on screen or window | 8-69 | 8.15.3.5 | 8-162 |

| | | | |
|---|------|---------------|-------|
| 8.3.9.1.3 Log on procedure | 8-69 | 8.15.3.7, 8 | 8-163 |
| 8.3.9.1.4 System startup | 8-70 | 8.15.3.6 | 8-163 |
| 8.3.9.1.5 User-initiated log off | 8-70 | 8.15.3.10, 1 | 8-163 |
| 8.3.9.1.6 Automatic log off | 8-70 | 8.15.3.15, 16 | 8-163 |
| 8.3.9.2.1 Appearance | 8-70 | 8.14.3.3.1 | 8-143 |
| 8.3.9.2.2 System window components | 8-70 | 8.14.3.3.3. | 8-144 |
| 8.3.9.2.3 System window behavior | 8-71 | 8.14.3.3.8 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.9.3.1 Integration of applications into system-level menus | 8-71 | 8.7.5.9.1 | 8-77 |
| 8.3.9.3.2 System window menu bar | 8-71 | 8.7.5.9.2 | 8-78 |
| 8.3.9.3.3 Consistency across systems | 8-71 | 8.7.5.9.3 | 8-78 |
| 8.3.9.3.4 Access to Help | 8-71 | 8.7.5.9.5 | 8-78 |
| 8.3.9.3.5 Navigation aid | 8-71 | 8.7.5.9.6 | 8-78 |
| 8.3.9.4.1 System menu | 8-71 | 8.7.5.8.1 | 8-161 |
| 8.3.9.4.2 System utilities menu | 8-72 | 8.7.5.8.5 | 8-77 |
| 8.3.9.4.3 Additional support functions | 8-72 | 8.15.1.1 | 8-161 |
| 8.3.9.4.4 User-specified settings | 8-72 | 8.15.1.6 | 8-161 |
| 8.3.10.1.1 Components of application windows | 8-72 | 8.14.3.2.1 | 8-142 |
| 8.3.10.1.2 Window title | 8-73 | 8.14.3.2.2, 3 | 8-142 |
| 8.3.10.1.3 Window menu bars | 8-73 | 8.7.5.7 | 8-76 |
| 8.3.10.1.4 Names of menu bar options | 8-73 | 8.7.5.7.7 | 8-76 |
| 8.3.10.1.5 Push buttons | 8-73 | 8.14.2.8.6 | 8-140 |
| 8.3.10.1.6 Help button | 8-73 | 8.14.2.8.5 | 8-139 |
| 8.3.10.1.7 Action icons | 8-73 | 8.13.3.25 | 8-118 |
| 8.3.10.1.8 Action icons bound to window | 8-74 | 8.13.3.27 | 8-118 |
| 8.3.10.1.9 Message area | 8-74 | 8.14.3.1.2 | 8-140 |
| 8.3.10.1.10 Consistency in window organization | 8-74 | 8.14.1.10 | 8-133 |
| 8.3.10.1.11 Control windows (dialog boxes) | 8-74 | 8.14.4.74 | 8-149 |
| 8.3.10.2.1 Allowed operations | 8-74 | 8.14.4.1.3 | 8-146 |
| 8.3.10.2.2 Disallowed operations | 8-74 | 8.14.4.1.2 | 8-146 |
| 8.3.10.2.3 Message windows -- contents | 8-75 | 8.14.4.1.5 | 8-146 |
| 8.3.10.2.4 Message wording | 8-75 | 8.14.4.1.4 | 8-146 |
| 8.3.10.2.5 Message windows -- size and location | 8-75 | 8.14.4.1.7 | 8-147 |
| 8.3.10.2.6 Request message windows | 8-75 | 8.14.4.2 | 8-147 |
| 8.3.10.2.7 Error message windows | 8-76 | 8.14.4.8.1 | 8-150 |
| 8.3.10.2.8 Information message windows | 8-76 | 8.14.4.3.2 | 8-148 |
| 8.3.10.2.9 Information message window behavior | 8-76 | 8.14.4.3.3 | 8-148 |

| | | | |
|---|------|----------------|-------|
| 8.3.10.2.10 Confirmation message windows | 8-76 | 8.14.4.4.1 | 8-148 |
| 8.3.10.2.11 Warning message windows | 8-76 | 8.14.4.5.1 | 8-148 |
| 8.3.10.2.12 Accompanying audible warning signals | 8-76 | 8.14.4.5.4 | 8-148 |
| 8.3.10.2.13 "Working" message windows | 8-76 | 8.14.4.6.5 | 8-148 |
| 8.3.10.2.14 Progressive working messages | 8-76 | 8.14.4.6.6 | 8-149 |
| 8.3.10.3.2 Consistent use of color | 8-77 | 8.6.2.1.2 | 8-55 |
| 8.3.10.3.3 Limited use of color | 8-77 | 8.6.2.1.5 | 8-55 |
| 8.3.10.3.4 Coding and status colors | 8-77 | 8.6.2.9.4 | 8-62 |
| 8.3.10.3.5 User preferences | 8-77 | 8.6.2.9.4 | 8-62 |
| 8.3.10.4.1 Contrast | 8-77 | 8.2.5.1.11 | 8-12 |
| 8.3.10.4.2 Dot matrices | 8-77 | 8.2.5.6.15 | 8-17 |
| 8.3.10.4.3 Minimum character height | 8-77 | 8.2.5.6.6 | 8-16 |
| 8.3.10.4.4 User-selectable font size | 8-77 | 8.2.5.7.1 | 8-17 |
| 8.3.10.4.5 Arabic vs. Roman numerals | 8-77 | 8.2.5.2.1 | 8-12 |
| 8.3.10.4.6 Capitalization | 8-78 | 8.2.5.8.1 | 8-18 |
| 8.3.10.4.7 Acronyms | 8-78 | 8.2.5.4.5 | 8-14 |
| 8.3.10.4.8 Abbreviations | 8-78 | 8.2.5.4.10 | 8-12 |
| 8.3.10.4.9 Formation of acronyms and abbreviations | 8-78 | 8.2.5.4.9 | 8-12 |
| 8.3.10.4.10 Dictionary of acronyms and abbreviations | 8-78 | 8.2.5.4.10 | 8-12 |
| 8.3.10.4.11 Consistent structure for noneditable text | 8-78 | 8.2.5.1.1 | 8-11 |
| 8.3.10.4.12 Vocabulary | 8-78 | 8.1.1.7 | 8-2 |
| 8.3.10.4.13 Sentence structure | 8-78 | 8.2.5.1.2 | 8-11 |
| 8.3.10.4.14 Punctuation | 8-78 | 8.2.5.1.6 | 8-11 |
| 8.3.10.4.15 Sequences | 8-78 | 8.2.5.2.4 | 8-13 |
| 8.3.10.4.16 Referents | 8-78 | 8.2.5.2.5 | 8-13 |
| 8.3.10.4.17 Case conversion | 8-78 | 8.2.3.1 | 8-7 |
| 8.3.10.4.18 Wild card search characters | 8-79 | 8.2.3.2 | 8-7 |
| 8.3.11.1 Initial window contents and organization | 8-79 | 8.14.1.12 | 8-133 |
| 8.3.11.2 Initial size | 8-79 | 8.14.1.13 | 8-134 |
| 8.3.11.3 Initial placement | 8-79 | 8.14.1.14 | 8-134 |
| 8.3.11.4 Resizing | 8-79 | 8.14.6.7.1, 2 | 8-133 |
| 8.3.11.5 Mode of windows | 8-79 | 8.14.3.1.18 | 8-142 |
| 8.3.12.1.1 Help availability | 8-80 | 8.16.2.16 | 8-178 |
| 8.3.12.1.2 Help window elements | 8-80 | 8.16.7.1 | 8-183 |
| 8.3.12.1.3 Size and placement | 8-80 | 8.16.7.3 & 7.4 | 8-183 |
| 8.3.12.1.4 Help information | 8-80 | 8.16.7.6 | 8-183 |
| 8.3.12.1.5 Wording of help information | 8-81 | 8.16.7.6 | 8-183 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------------|-------|
| 8.3.12.1.6 Removal of help windows | 8-81 | 8.16.7.7 | 8-183 |
| 8.3.12.2.1 Data entry window elements | 8-81 | 8.14.3.4.1 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.12.2.2 Data window organization | 8-81 | 8.14.3.4.2 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.12.2.3 Multipage data entry window | 8-81 | 8.14.3.4.3 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.12.2.4 Push buttons in data entry windows | 8-81 | 8.14.3.4.4 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.12.2.5 Controls for data entry windows | 8-81 | 8.14.3.4.5 | 8-144 |
| 8.3.12.2.6 Help on data entry fields | 8-82 | 8.14.3.4.3 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.2.11 Saving entered data | 8-82 | 8.14.3.4.6 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.3.1 Width of a text window | 8-82 | 8.14.3.5.1 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.3.2 Vertical scroll bars | 8-82 | 8.14.3.5.2 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.3.3 Document operations | 8-82 | 8.2.4.1.1 | 8-8 |
| 8.3.12.3.4 Text manipulation | 8-82 | 8.2.4.1.2 | 8-9 |
| 8.3.12.3.5 Search and replace capabilities | 8-83 | 8.2.4.1.6 | 8-9 |
| 8.3.12.4.1 Map window elements | 8-83 | 8.14.3.6.1 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.4.2 Map orientation | 8-83 | 8.14.3.6.1 | 8-145 |
| 8.3.12.4.3 Consistent label position | 8-83 | 8.3.2.1.17 | 8-33 |
| 8.3.12.4.4 Label legibility | 8-83 | 8.3.2.1.18 | 8-33 |
| 8.3.12.4.5 Color coding key | 8-83 | 8.3.2.1.24 | 8-34 |
| 8.3.12.4.6 Symbols and color codes | 8-83 | 8.3.2.1.22 | 8-34 |
| 8.3.12.4.7 User control of map appearance | 8-83 | 8.3.2.2.1 | 8-35 |
| 8.3.12.4.8 User editing of labels and overlays | 8-84 | 8.3.2.1.31 | 8-34 |
| 8.3.12.4.9 "Reading" a map | 8-84 | 8.3.2.1.3.6 | 8-35 |
| 8.3.12.4.10 Crowded, cluttered maps | 8-84 | 8.3.2.2.21 | 8-37 |
| 8.3.12.4.11 User control of automatic updating | 8-84 | 8.5.1.4 | 8-53 |
| 8.3.12.5.1 Message handling windows | 8-84 | 8.17.1.2 | 8-184 |
| 8.3.12.5.2 Message window fields and headers | 8-84 | 8.17.4.3 | 8-186 |
| 8.3.12.5.3 Field support | 8-84 | 8.17.4.4 | 8-186 |
| 8.3.12.5.4 Distribution lists | 8-84 | 8.17.4.9 | 8-187 |
| 8.3.12.5.5 Message transmission | 8-84 | 8.17.3.1 | 8-185 |
| 8.3.12.5.6 Delayed or unsuccessful transmission | 8-84 | 8.17.3.10,1 1 | 8-187 |
| 8.3.12.5.7 Message status information | 8-85 | 8.17.5.2 | 8-187 |
| 8.3.12.5.8 Notification of message arrival | 8-85 | 8.17.5.4 | 8-187 |
| 8.3.12.5.9 Queuing and logging incoming messages | 8-85 | 8.17.5.7,8 | 8-187 |
| 8.3.12.5.10 Incoming message operations | 8-85 | 8.17.5.1 | 8-187 |
| 8.4.1.1.1 Consistent style | 8-85 | 8.7.5.1.4 | 8-72 |
| 8.4.1.1.2 Consistent wording and ordering | 8-85 | 8.7.5.1.5 | 8-72 |
| 8.4.1.1.3 Scrollable menus | 8-86 | 8.7.5.1.2 | 8-71 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------------|-------|
| 8.4.1.1.5 Distinguishing types of options | 8-86 | 8.7.5.4.1 | 8-74 |
| 8.4.1.1.6 Distinguishing unavailable options | 8-86 | 8.7.5.3.6 | 8-73 |
| 8.4.1.1.7 Instructions | 8-86 | 8.7.5.1.6 | 8-72 |
| 8.4.1.1.8 Menus distinct from other displayed information | 8-86 | 8.7.5.1.3 | 8-72 |
| 8.4.1.2.1 When to use | 8-86 | 8.7.5.11.1 | 8-80 |
| 8.4.1.3.1 When to use | 8-87 | 8.7.5.10.1 | 8-78 |
| 8.4.1.3.2 Consistent location | 8-87 | 8.7.5.10.2 | 8-78 |
| 8.4.1.4.2 Pop-up menu location | 8-87 | 8.7.5.14.6 | 8-85 |
| 8.4.1.4.3 Selection highlighting | 8-87 | 8.7.5.14.9 | 8-85 |
| 8.4.1.5.1 Presentation of options | 8-88 | 8.7.5.6.1 | 8-75 |
| 8.4.1.5.2 Consistent menus and options | 8-88 | 8.7.5.1.5 | 8-72 |
| 8.4.1.5.3 Logical grouping of menu options | 8-88 | 8.7.5.6.5 | 8-75 |
| 8.4.1.5.4 Ordering groups of options | 8-88 | 8.7.5.6.3 | 8-75 |
| 8.4.1.5.5 Ordering options within a group or menu | 8-88 | 8.7.5.6.4 | 8-75 |
| 8.4.1.6.1 Equivalence of input devices | 8-88 | 8.7.6.1.3 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.2 Menu selection by pointing | 8-88 | 8.7.6.1.4 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.3 Method of selecting by pointing | 8-88 | 8.7.6.1.5 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.4 Initial cursor position for pointing devices | 8-88 | 8.7.6.1.5 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.5 Initial cursor position for keyboards | 8-89 | 8.7.6.1.2 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.6 Feedback for menu selection | 8-89 | 8.15.8 | 8-87 |
| 8.4.1.6.7 Number of selections per menu | 8-89 | 8.7.5.1.2 | 8-71 |
| 8.4.2.1.1 Text input area | 8-89 | 8.2.4.1.13 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.1.2 Distinctive appearance | 8-89 | 8.2.5.1.13 | 8-12 |
| 8.4.2.1.3 Contrast | 8-89 | 8.2.5.1.11 | 8-12 |
| 8.4.2.1.4 Multiple input devices | 8-89 | 8.2.4.1.14 | 8-19 |
| 8.4.2.1.5 Multiple cursors | 8-89 | 8.13.10.1.1 | 8-126 |
| 8.4.2.1.6 Cursor movement | 8-89 | 8.13.10.1.3 | 8-127 |
| 8.4.2.1.7 Enhanced cursor movement | 8-89 | 8.13.10.1.4 | 8-127 |
| 8.4.2.1.8 Frequently used text blocks | 8-90 | 8.2.4.1.15 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.2.1 Insert mode as default | 8-90 | 8.2.4.1.7 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.2.2 Action of Backspace and Delete | 8-90 | 8.2.4.1.9, 1.8 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.2.3 Editing operations | 8-90 | 8.2.4.1.1 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.2.2.4 Searching text | 8-90 | 8.2.3.2 | 8-7 |
| 8.4.2.2.5 Global search and replace | 8-90 | 8.2.4.1.6 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.2.6 Editing units of text | 8-90 | 8.2.3.2 | 8-9 |
| 8.4.2.2.7 Highlighting units of text | 8-90 | 8.6.3.6 | 8-64 |
| 8.4.2.3.1 Text format | 8-90 | 8.2.4.3.1 | 8-10 |

| | | | |
|---|------|-------------------|-------|
| 8.4.2.3.2 Page formatting | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.2 | 8-10 |
| 8.4.2.3.3 Line breaks | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.4, 3.5 | 8-10 |
| 8.4.2.3.4 Justification of text | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.6 | 8-10 |
| 8.4.2.3.5 Hyphenation | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.8 | 8-11 |
| 8.4.2.3.6 Page breaks | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.10 | 8-11 |
| 8.4.2.3.7 Page numbering | 8-91 | 8.2.4.3.12 | 8-11 |
| 8.4.2.4.1 Text cursor | 8-91 | 8.13.10.2.1 | 8-127 |
| 8.4.2.4.2 Text cursor location | 8-91 | 8.13.10.2.7 | 8-127 |
| 8.4.2.4.3 Moving the text cursor | 8-91 | 8.13.10.2.2 | 8-128 |
| 8.4.2.4.4 Control entries distinguishable from text | 8-92 | 8.12.1.4 | 8-112 |
| 8.4.3.1.1 Title | 8-92 | 8.2.11.1.1 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.1.2 Consistency | 8-92 | 8.2.11.1.2 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.1.3 Field help | 8-92 | 8.2.11.1.3 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.2.1 Appearance | 8-92 | 8.2.11.2.1 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.2.2 Field length | 8-92 | 8.2.11.2.2 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.2.3 Entry does not overwrite field delineators | 8-92 | 8.2.11.2.3 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.2.4 Unfilled portion of field | 8-92 | 8.2.11.2.4 | 8-24 |
| 8.4.3.2.5 Required fields | 8-93 | 8.2.11.2.5 | 8-25 |
| 8.4.3.2.6 Optional fields distinct from required fields | 8-93 | 8.2.11.2.7 | 8-25 |
| 8.4.3.2.7 Intrafield separators | 8-93 | 8.2.11.2.8 | 8-25 |
| 8.4.3.3.1 Field labels | 8-93 | 8.2.11.4.1 | 8-26 |
| 8.4.3.3.2 Descriptive labels | 8-93 | 8.2.11.4.7 | 8-26 |
| 8.4.3.3.3 Terms used in labels | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.8 | 8-26 |
| 8.4.3.3.4 Labels distinct from other information | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.2 | 8-26 |
| 8.4.3.3.5 Label terminator | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.9 | 8-27 |
| 8.4.3.3.6 Consistent location | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.10 | 8-27 |
| 8.4.3.3.7 Unit of measurement | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.11 | 8-27 |
| 8.4.3.3.8 Alternative units | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.12 | 8-27 |
| 8.4.3.3.9 Labels not editable | 8-94 | 8.2.11.4.3 | 8-26 |
| 8.4.3.4.1 Correspondence between screen and document | 8-94 | 8.2.11.5.1 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.4.2 Layout with no source document | 8-95 | 8.2.11.5.2 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.4.3 Multipage forms | 8-95 | 8.2.11.5.3 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.1 Initial cursor position | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.1 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.2 Easy cursor movement | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.2 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.3 No automatic movement | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.6 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.4 Navigation only to fields | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.7 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.5 Protected fields | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.8 | 8-28 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| 8.4.3.5.6 Moving to "next" and "previous" fields | 8-95 | 8.2.11.6.9 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.3.5.7 Navigation with a pointer | 8-96 | 8.2.11.5.10 | 8-29 |
| 8.4.3.6.2 Displaying default values | 8-96 | 8.2.11.7.2 | 8-29 |
| 8.4.3.6.3 Replacing default values in fields | 8-96 | 8.2.11.7.3 | 8-30 |
| 8.4.3.7.1 Unfilled spaces | 8-96 | 8.2.3.3 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.7.2 Leading and trailing zeros | 8-96 | 8.2.3.4 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.7.3 Justification of entries | 8-96 | 8.2.3.5 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.7.4 Interrupt capabilities | 8-97 | 8.2.3.7 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.7.5 Editing entries | 8-97 | 8.2.3.8 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.7.6 Explicit "completion" action | 8-97 | 8.2.3.9 | 8-8 |
| 8.4.3.8.1 Easy error correction | 8-97 | 8.2.11.8.1 | 8-30 |
| 8.4.3.8.2 Unacceptable entries | 8-97 | 8.2.11.8.2 | 8-30 |
| 8.4.3.8.3 Omitted fields | 8-97 | 8.2.11.8.3 | 8-30 |
| 8.4.3.8.4 Deliberate omissions | 8-97 | 8.2.11.8.4 | 8-30 |
| 8.4.4.1 Drag transfer | 8-97 | 8.8.1.3 | 8-94 |
| 8.4.5.1 When to use | 8-98 | 8.2.10.1 | 8-22 |
| 8.4.5.2 Labels | 8-98 | 8.2.10.8 | 8-22 |
| 8.4.5.3 Leading and trailing zeros | 8-98 | 8.2.10.11 | 8-23 |
| 8.4.5.4 Automatic justification | 8-98 | 8.2.10.12 | 8-23 |
| 8.4.5.5 Navigation with the Tab key | 8-98 | 8.2.10.13 | 8-23 |
| 8.4.5.6 Navigating with a pointing device | 8-98 | 8.2.11.6.4 | 8-28 |
| 8.4.5.7 Large tables | 8-98 | 8.2.10.3 | 8-22 |
| 8.4.5.8 Labels in scrolling tables | 8-99 | 8.2.10.10 | 8-23 |
| 8.4.6.1.1 Pointing device | 8-99 | 8.13.10.5 | 8-129 |
| 8.4.6.1.2 Graphics cursor | 8-99 | 8.13.10.3.1 | 8-128 |
| 8.4.6.1.3 Graphics cursor operation | 8-99 | 8.13.10.4.3 | 8-128 |
| 8.4.6.1.4 Validation on input | 8-99 | 8.13.10.2.1 | 8-175 |
| 8.4.6.1.5 Saving and retrieving graphic data | 8-99 | 8.13.10.1.1 | 8-106 |
| 8.4.6.2.1 Drawing lines | 8-99 | 8.3.4.1.1 | 8-48 |
| 8.4.6.2.2 Constraining lines | 8-99 | 8.3.4.1.3 | 8-48 |
| 8.4.6.2.3 Alignment grid | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.4 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.4 Alternate drawing methods | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.5 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.5 Closure | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.6 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.6 Displaying attributes | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.8 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.7 Colors and patterns | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.9 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.8 Selectable elements and attributes | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.10 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.9 Manipulating objects | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.11 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.10 Editing objects | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.12 | 8-49 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------|-------|
| 8.4.6.2.11 Scaling objects | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.13 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.12 Zoom capability | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.14 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.13 Overlapping objects | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.15 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.2.14 Grouping objects | 8-100 | 8.3.4.1.16 | 8-49 |
| 8.4.6.3.1 Entering data for plotting | 8-101 | 8.3.4.2.1 | 8-50 |
| 8.4.6.3.2 Plotting stored data | 8-101 | 8.3.4.3.3 | 8-50 |
| 8.4.6.3.3 Scaling graphic data | 8-101 | 8.3.4.3.13 | 8-50 |
| 8.4.6.3.4 Emergence of drawn objects | 8-101 | 8.3.4.3.5 | 8-50 |
| 8.4.7.1 Format and content | 8-101 | 8.15.12.2 | 8-175 |
| 8.4.7.2 Valid data | 8-101 | 8.15.12.3 | 8-175 |
| 8.4.7.3 Invalid data | 8-101 | 8.15.12.4 | 8-175 |
| 8.4.7.4 Probable errors | 8-101 | 8.15.12.5 | 8-176 |
| 8.5.1.2 Consistent with user expectations | 8-102 | 8.1.4.6 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.1.3 Consistent within applications | 8-102 | 8.1.4.7 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.1.4 Whole data sets | 8-102 | 8.1.1.5 | 8-2 |
| 8.5.1.5 Information density | 8-102 | 8.1.1.2 | 8-1 |
| 8.5.1.6 Usable, essential data for a transaction | 8-102 | 8.1.1.4 | 8-2 |
| 8.5.1.7 User control | 8-102 | 8.1.3.10 | 8-4 |
| 8.5.1.8 Paper copy | 8-102 | 8.1.5.5.1 | 8-164 |
| 8.5.1.9 Date and time information | 8-102 | 8.1.1.8 | 8-2 |
| 8.5.1.10 Familiar wording | 8-102 | 8.8.2.10 | 8-96 |
| 8.5.1.11 Display formats | 8-102 | 8.1.4.5 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.1.12 Blank space | 8-102 | 8.8.2.2.1 | 8-97 |
| 8.5.1.13 Grouped information | 8-102 | 8.1.3.11 | 8-4 |
| 8.5.1.14 Reserved area | 8-103 | 8.1.3.2 | 8-3 |
| 8.5.1.17 Arranging data | 8-103 | 8.1.3.16 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.1.18 Context | 8-103 | 8.1.2.1 | 8-2 |
| 8.5.1.19 Multipage displays | 8-103 | 8.2.8.1 | 8-20 |
| 8.5.1.20 Partitioning data among pages | 8-103 | 8.2.8.2 | 8-20 |
| 8.5.1.21 Labeling pages | 8-103 | 8.2.8.3 | 8-20 |
| 8.5.2.1.1 Consistent wording and structure | 8-103 | 8.2.5.1.1 | 8-11 |
| 8.5.2.1.2 Contrast | 8-103 | 8.2.5.1.11 | 8-12 |
| 8.5.2.2.1 Distinct, unique, descriptive labels | 8-103 | 8.2.5.5.1 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.2.2.2 Alphanumeric labels | 8-103 | 8.2.5.5.2 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.2.2.3 Consistency | 8-104 | 8.2.5.5.3 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.2.2.4 Spacing | 8-104 | 8.2.5.5.4 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.3.1 Distinctive fields | 8-104 | 8.2.11.2.1 | 8-24 |
| 8.5.4.1.1 Meaningful codes | 8-104 | 8.6.1.5 | 8-54 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-----------|-------|
| 8.5.4.1.2 When to use | 8-104 | 8.6.1.1 | 8-54 |
| 8.5.4.1.3 Coding data categories | 8-104 | 8.6.1.3 | 8-54 |
| 8.5.4.1.4 Consistent coding | 8-104 | 8.6.1.6 | 8-54 |
| 8.5.4.1.5 Special codes | 8-104 | 8.6.1.7 | 8-54 |
| 8.5.4.2.1 Supplemental use only | 8-104 | 8.2.6.1.1 | 8-18 |
| 8.5.4.2.2 Case of letters | 8-104 | 8.2.6.1.2 | 8-18 |
| 8.5.4.2.3 Mixed letter and number codes | 8-104 | 8.2.6.1.3 | 8-18 |
| 8.5.4.2.4 Length of codes | 8-105 | 8.2.6.1.4 | 8-19 |
| 8.5.4.3.1 Acknowledging auditory signals | 8-105 | 7.2.9.3 | 7-12 |
| 8.5.4.3.2 User control | 8-105 | 7.2.9.2 | 7-12 |
| 8.5.4.3.3 Delayed computer response | 8-105 | 8.15.8.8 | 8-169 |
| 8.5.4.3.4 Nature of auditory signals | 8-105 | 7.2.3.1 | 7-8 |
| 8.5.4.3.5 Environmental compatibility | 8-105 | 7.2.8.1 | 7-11 |
| 8.5.4.4.1 Consistent meaning | 8-105 | 8.6.3.1 | 8-63 |
| 8.5.4.4.2 Number of levels | 8-105 | 8.6.3.2 | 8-63 |
| 8.5.4.4.3 Brightness ratios | 8-105 | 8.6.3.3 | 8-63 |
| 8.5.4.5.1 Reserved meanings | 8-106 | 8.6.2.4.3 | 8-59 |
| 8.5.4.5.2 Color coding data categories | 8-106 | 8.6.2.1.4 | 8-55 |
| 8.5.4.5.3 Redundant use | 8-106 | 8.6.2.1.5 | 8-55 |
| 8.5.4.5.4 Use of color | 8-106 | 8.6.2.1.6 | 8-55 |
| 8.5.4.5.5 Drawing attention | 8-106 | 8.6.2.2.1 | 8-56 |
| 8.5.4.6.1 Limited use | 8-106 | 8.6.11.1 | 8-67 |
| 8.5.4.6.2 Flashing rate | 8-106 | 8.6.11.3 | 8-68 |
| 8.5.4.6.3 Second flashing rate | 8-107 | 8.6.11.4 | 8-68 |
| 8.5.4.6.4 Displayed objects | 8-107 | 8.6.11.7 | 8-68 |
| 8.5.4.6.5 Flash acknowledgment | 8-107 | 8.6.11.5 | 8-68 |
| 8.5.4.7.1 Length | 8-107 | 8.6.4.2 | 8-65 |
| 8.5.4.7.2 Direction | 8-107 | 8.6.4.3 | 8-65 |
| 8.5.4.8.1 Design of symbols | 8-107 | 8.1.3.3.1 | 8-116 |
| 8.5.4.8.2 Special symbols | 8-107 | 8.6.5.1 | 8-65 |
| 8.5.4.9.1 Number of shape codes | 8-107 | 8.6.6.2 | 8-66 |
| 8.5.4.10.1 Number of sizes | 8-107 | 8.6.7.2 | 8-66 |
| 8.5.5.1.1 Complex formats | 8-108 | 8.3.1.1 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.5.1.2 Robustness | 8-108 | 8.3.1.4 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.1.3 Appropriateness of format | 8-108 | 8.3.1.2 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.5.1.5 User selection of style | 8-108 | 8.3.1.3 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.5.1.6 Value display | 8-108 | 8.3.1.1 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.1.7 Consistency | 8-108 | 8.3.1.2 | 8-31 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|-------|
| 8.5.5.1.8 Labels | 8-108 | 8.3.1.3 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.2.1 Reference values | 8-108 | 8.3.1.5 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.2.2 Display data values with graphics | 8-108 | 8.3.1.6 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.2.3 Consistent labeling location | 8-108 | 8.2.1.6 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.5.2.4 Supplementary text | 8-108 | 8.3.1.7 | 8-31 |
| 8.5.5.3.1 Validation | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.1 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.2 Plotting aids | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.2 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.3 Plotting stored data | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.3 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.4 Automated production of scales | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.5 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.5 Line drawing | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.6 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.6 Automatic completion of polygons | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.7 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.7 Joining lines | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.8 | 8-50 |
| 8.5.5.3.8 Designating line segments | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.9 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.9 Grid references | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.10 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.10 User-specified rules | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.11 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.11 Computer aids | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.12 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.12 Scale changes | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.13 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.13 Basic operations | 8-109 | 8.3.2.3.14 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.14 Grouping elements | 8-110 | 8.3.2.3.15 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.15 Area fill capability | 8-110 | 8.3.2.3.16 | 8-5 |
| 8.5.5.3.16 Computer models | 8-110 | 8.15.1.6. | 8-161 |
| 8.5.5.4.1 Standard conventions | 8-110 | 8.3.3.1.1 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.5.4.2 Consistent use of symbols | 8-110 | 8.3.3.1.2 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.5.4.3 Color and pattern coding | 8-110 | 8.3.3.1.3 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.5.4.4 Patterns | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.4 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.5.4.5 Breaks in axes | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.5 | 8-40 |
| 8.5.5.4.6 Duplicate axes | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.8 | 8-40 |
| 8.5.5.4.7 Consistent formats | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.9 | 8-40 |
| 8.5.5.4.8 Linear scales | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.11 | 8-40 |
| 8.5.5.4.9 Single scale per axis | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.13 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.10 Labeling axes | 8-111 | 8.3.3.1.14 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.11 Scale divisions | 8-112 | 8.3.3.1.16 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.12 Numeric scales | 8-112 | 8.3.3.1.17 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.13 Label format | 8-112 | 8.3.3.1.19 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.14 Labeling data elements | 8-112 | 8.3.3.1.18 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.4.15 Location of legends and keys | 8-112 | 8.3.3.1.21 | 8-41 |
| 8.5.5.5.1 When to use | 8-112 | 8.3.3.2.1 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.5.2 Grid lines vs. Data | 8-112 | 8.3.3.2.2 | 8-42 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-------------|-------|
| 8.5.5.5.3 User choice | 8-112 | 8.3.3.2.3 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.6.1 Use of lines and curves | 8-113 | 8.3.3.3.1 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.6.2 Labeling and highlighting multiple lines and curves | 8-113 | 8.3.3.3.2 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.6.3 Coding lines and curves | 8-113 | 8.3.3.3.5 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.6.4 Cyclic data | 8-113 | 8.3.3.3.7 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.6.5 Projected values | 8-113 | 8.3.3.3.6 | 8-42 |
| 8.5.5.7.1 Area between curves | 8-113 | 8.3.3.4.1 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.7.2 Stacked curves | 8-113 | 8.3.3.4.2 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.7.3 Labeling areas | 8-113 | 8.3.3.4.3 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.8.1 When to use | 8-113 | 8.3.3.5.1 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.8.2 Highlighting points | 8-113 | 8.3.3.5.2 | 8-43 |
| 8.5.5.9.1 When to use | 8-114 | 8.3.3.7.1 | 8-45 |
| 8.5.5.9.2 When not to use | 8-114 | 8.3.3.7.2 | 8-45 |
| 8.5.5.9.3 Labeling pie charts | 8-114 | 8.3.3.7.3 | 8-45 |
| 8.5.5.9.4 Highlighting segments | 8-114 | 8.3.3.7.6 | 8-45 |
| 8.5.5.10.1 Automated aids | 8-114 | 8.3.4.3.17 | 8-51 |
| 8.5.5.11.1 Large diagrams | 8-114 | 8.3.3.12.1 | 8-47 |
| 8.5.5.11.2 Highlighting portions of diagrams | 8-114 | 8.3.3.12.10 | 8-48 |
| 8.5.5.11.3 Rotation of diagrams | 8-114 | 8.3.3.12.11 | 8-48 |
| 8.5.5.12.1 Flowchart design | 8-114 | 8.3.3.11.1 | 8-46 |
| 8.5.5.12.2 Consistency | 8-115 | 8.3.3.11.3 | 8-46 |
| 8.5.5.12.3 Highlighting | 8-115 | 8.3.3.11.4 | 8-46 |
| 8.5.5.12.4 Flowcharts as decision aids | 8-115 | 8.3.3.11.5 | 8-46 |
| 8.5.5.12.5 Flowchart orientation | 8-115 | 8.3.3.11.7 | 8-47 |
| 8.5.6.1.1 User tailoring | 8-115 | 8.8.3.1.16 | 8-99 |
| 8.5.6.1.2 Return to normal display | 8-115 | 8.6.2.9.2 | 8-63 |
| 8.5.6.2.1 Control locations and options | 8-115 | 8.13.2.1 | 8-115 |
| 8.5.6.2.2 Default values | 8-115 | 8.13.2.2 | 8-115 |
| 8.5.6.2.3 Control information | 8-115 | 8.13.2.3 | 8-115 |
| 8.5.6.3.1 Moving through data | 8-116 | 8.2.8.5 | 8-21 |
| 8.5.6.3.2 Moving through continuous text | 8-116 | 8.2.8.6 | 8-21 |
| 8.5.6.3.3 Moving through grouped information | 8-116 | 8.2.8.7 | 8-21 |
| 8.5.6.4.1 When to provide scrolling, paging, and panning | 8-116 | 8.3.4.4.1 | 8-51 |
| 8.5.6.4.2 When to provide zooming | 8-116 | 8.3.4.4.2 | 8-52 |
| 8.5.6.4.3 Scale indication | 8-116 | 8.3.4.4.5 | 8-52 |
| 8.5.6.4.4 Scale integration | 8-116 | 8.3.4.4.4 | 8-52 |
| 8.5.6.5.1 Suppression indication | 8-116 | 8.4.1.1 | 8-52 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|-------|
| 8.5.6.5.2 Indication of changes in suppressed information | 8-117 | 8.4.1.2 | 8-52 |
| 8.5.6.5.3 Restoration of suppressed information | 8-117 | 8.4.1.3 | 8-52 |
| 8.5.6.6.1 Display identification | 8-117 | 8.2.5.5.5 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.6.6.2 Labels | 8-117 | 8.2.5.5.1 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.6.6.3 Numbering multipage displays | 8-117 | 8.2.11.5.3 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.6.6.4 Numbering items in multidisplay lists | 8-117 | 8.2.9.10 | 8-15 |
| 8.5.7.1.1 Update rate | 8-117 | 8.5.1.2 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.1.2 "Real time" data | 8-117 | 8.5.1.1 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.1.3 Alphanumeric data | 8-117 | 8.5.1.3 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.2.1 Display regeneration | 8-117 | 8.5.1.4 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.2.2 User control of rate of update | 8-118 | 8.5.1.4 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.2.3 Automatic updating | 8-118 | 8.5.1.4 | 8-53 |
| 8.5.7.3.1 "Freezing" changing data | 8-118 | 8.9.2.1 | 8-106 |
| 8.5.7.3.2 Labeling a frozen display | 8-118 | 8.9.2.2 | 8-106 |
| 8.5.7.3.3 Notification of changes while display is frozen | 8-118 | 8.9.2.3 | 8-106 |
| 8.5.7.3.4 Unfreezing a display | 8-118 | 8.9.2.4 | 8-106 |
| 8.5.8.1.1 User expectations | 8-118 | 8.1.4.6 | 8-6 |
| 8.5.8.1.2 Amount of detail | 8-118 | 8.3.3.1.22 | 8-47 |
| 8.5.8.1.3 Map manipulation tools | 8-118 | 8.3.2.2.2 | 8-35 |
| 8.5.8.1.4 Curvature | 8-118 | 8.3.2.1.8 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.1.5 Situation displays as overlays | 8-118 | 8.3.2.1.10 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.1.6 Labeling features | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.16 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.1.7 Consistent label position | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.17 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.1.8 Consistent orientation | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.11 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.1.9 Coding areas | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.12 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.1.10 Automated tools | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.15 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.1 Map coverage | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.6 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.2.2 Necessary features | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.6 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.2.3 Label legibility | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.18 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.4 Reducing clutter | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.32 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.2.5 Association of symbols with map features | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.21 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.6 Automatic registration | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.9 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.2.7 Symbol identification key | 8-119 | 8.3.2.1.20 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.8 Color coding symbols | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.22 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.9 Nonoverlapping of symbols | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.27 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.2.10 Labeling symbols | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.19 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.11 Coordinate readings | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.34 | 8-34 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|------|
| 8.5.8.2.12 Determining coordinates | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.36 | 8-35 |
| 8.5.8.2.13 Context for displayed map | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.7 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.2.14 Determining distances | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.14 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.2.15 Determining bearings | 8-120 | 8.3.2.1.14 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.3.1 Panning | 8-120 | 8.3.2.2.3 | |
| 8.5.8.3.2 Location information | 8-120 | 8.3.2.2.4 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.3 Return to start | 8-120 | 8.3.2.2.5 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.4 Zooming | 8-120 | 8.3.2.2.6 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.5 Zooming and legibility | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.7 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.6 Discrete vs. continuous zooming | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.8 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.7 Return to default | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.9 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.8 Indication of changing scale | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.10 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.9 Indication of displayed portion of map | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.4 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.10 Selecting information for updating | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.11 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.11 Stable reference elements | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.12 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.12 Identification of updates | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.13 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.13 Control of frequency of updating | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.15 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.14 Rate of updating | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.16 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.15 Freezing a dynamic display | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.7 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.16 Control of rate of sequencing | 8-121 | 8.3.2.2.21 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.17 Freezing a sequence | 8-122 | 8.3.2.2.20 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.18 Direction of sequencing | 8-122 | 8.3.2.2.22 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.19 Viewing selected displays | 8-122 | 8.3.2.2.23 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.20 Grid overlay | 8-122 | 8.3.2.2.24 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.3.21 Map legend | 8-122 | 8.3.2.2.26 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.4.1 Standard symbol library | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.1 | 8-37 |
| 8.5.8.4.2 Labeling symbols | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.2 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.3 Tools for constructing symbols and overlays | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.3 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.4 Editing displays | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.4 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.5 Expanding displays | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.5 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.6 Editing display elements | 8-122 | 8.3.2.3.6 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.7 Identifying attributes | 8-123 | 8.3.2.3.7 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.8 Changing display attributes | 8-123 | 8.3.2.3.8 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.9 Changing display attributes by selection | 8-123 | 8.3.2.3.9 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.4.10 Print preview | 8-123 | 8.3.2.3.10 | 8-38 |
| 8.5.8.5.1 Map visibility | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.1 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.5.2 Map cursor | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.2 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.5.3 Filters | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.33 | 8-34 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------|-------|
| 8.5.8.5.4 Text and overlays | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.25 | 8-34 |
| 8.5.8.5.5 Color in overlays | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.23 | 8-33 |
| 8.5.8.5.6 Intensity | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.3 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.8.5.7 Map as background | 8-123 | 8.3.2.1.4 | 8-32 |
| 8.5.9.1.1 Word choice | 8-124 | 7.3.3.3 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.1.2 Words to avoid | 8-124 | 7.3.3.4 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.1.3 "Formal" words | 8-124 | 7.3.3.5 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.1.4 Alphabetic information | 8-124 | 7.3.1.4 | 7-14 |
| 8.5.9.2.1 "Average talker" | 8-124 | 7.3.4.1 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.2.2 Distinctive voices | 8-124 | 7.3.4.2 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.2.3 Content | 8-124 | 7.3.4.3. | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.2.4 Speech quality | 8-124 | 7.3.3.2 | 7-15 |
| 8.5.9.2.5 Alerting signals | 8-124 | 7.3.1.3 | 7-14 |
| 8.5.9.2.6 Acknowledging warning signals | 8-124 | 7.3.1.4 | 7-14 |
| 8.6.1.1.2 Availability of on-line help | 8-126 | 8.16.2.1 | 8-176 |
| 8.6.1.1.3 On-line guidance | 8-126 | 8.16.2.3 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.4 User-centered help | 8-126 | 8.16.2.5 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.5 Consistent and distinguishable formats | 8-126 | 8.16.2.7 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.6 Location of displayed help | 8-126 | 8.16.2.8 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.7 Highlighting critical information | 8-126 | 8.16.2.9 | 8-109 |
| 8.6.1.1.8 Prompts | 8-126 | 8.16.6.12 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.1.9 Experienced users | 8-126 | 8.8.3.5.4 | 8-104 |
| 8.6.1.1.10 Printing help information | 8-126 | 8.16.2.10 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.11 Searching on-line help | 8-126 | 8.16.2.11 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.12 User annotations | 8-127 | 8.16.2.12 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.1.13 User requests | 8-127 | 8.16.2.15 | 8-178 |
| 8.6.1.2.1 Access from and return to application | 8-127 | 8.16.3.1 | 8-178 |
| 8.6.1.2.2 Reminder of accessibility | 8-127 | 8.16.3.4 | 8-178 |
| 8.6.1.2.3 Notification of unavailability of help | 8-127 | 8.16.3.5 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.4 Standard action | 8-127 | 8.16.3.6 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.5 Consistent access | 8-127 | 8.16.3.7 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.6 Easy access | 8-127 | 8.16.3.8 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.7 Help command | 8-127 | 8.16.3.9 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.8 Easy alternation between help display and original display | 8-127 | 8.16.3.10 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.9 Easy return | 8-127 | 8.16.3.11 | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.10 Printing help information | 8-127 | 8.16.2.10. | 8-179 |
| 8.6.1.2.11 Single action | 8-127 | 8.16.3.13 | 8-177 |
| 8.6.1.2.12 Marketing topics for retrieval | 8-128 | 8.16.3.14 | 8-179 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-----------|-------|
| 8.6.1.2.13 Synonyms | 8-128 | 8.16.3.15 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.3.1 Task-oriented help | 8-128 | 8.16.4.1 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.3.2 Ambiguous context | 8-128 | 8.16.4.2 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.3.3 Context information in help display | 8-128 | 8.16.4.3 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.3.4 List valid entries | 8-128 | 8.16.4.4 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.3.5 Historical context | 8-128 | 8.16.4.5 | 8-180 |
| 8.6.1.4.2 Wording | 8-128 | 8.16.5.1 | 8-181 |
| 8.6.1.4.3 Appropriate to user | 8-128 | 8.16.5.2 | 8-181 |
| 8.6.1.5.1 Scope | 8-128 | 8.16.6.1 | 8-181 |
| 8.6.1.5.2 Only relevant information | 8-129 | 8.16.6.2 | 8-181 |
| 8.6.1.5.3 Multilevel help | 8-129 | 8.16.6.3 | 8-181 |
| 8.6.1.5.4 Help on Help | 8-129 | 8.16.6.4 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.5 Titles | 8-129 | 8.16.6.5 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.6 System information | 8-129 | 8.16.6.6 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.7 Application information | 8-129 | 8.16.6.7 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.8 Available commands | 8-129 | 8.16.6.8 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.9 Command examples | 8-129 | 8.16.6.9 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.10 Command format | 8-129 | 8.16.6.10 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.11 Function keys | 8-129 | 8.16.6.11 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.12 Prompts, requests, and definitions | 8-129 | 8.16.6.12 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.13 Error messages | 8-129 | 8.16.6.13 | 8-182 |
| 8.6.1.5.14 Shortcuts | 8-130 | 8.16.6.14 | 8-183 |
| 8.6.1.5.15 Help index | 8-130 | 8.16.6.15 | 8-183 |
| 8.6.1.5.16 Finding Help topics | 8-130 | 8.16.6.16 | 8-183 |
| 8.7.1.1 Integration with other system functions | 8-130 | 8.17.2.3 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.1.2 Consistent procedures | 8-130 | 8.17.1.1 | 8-183 |
| 8.7.1.3 Minimal memory load | 8-130 | 8.12.1.2 | 8-112 |
| 8.7.1.4 Explicit user actions | 8-130 | 8.17.1.4 | 8-183 |
| 8.7.1.6 Interruptable by user | 8-130 | 8.17.1.5 | 8-183 |
| 8.7.1.7 Annotations to transmitted data | 8-130 | 8.17.3.7 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.2.1.2 Printing messages | 8-131 | 8.17.1.7 | 8-184 |
| 8.7.2.2.2 What can be transmitted | 8-131 | 8.17.3.2 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.2.2.3 Saving prepared messages | 8-131 | 8.17.2.4 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.2.3.1 User-designed format | 8-131 | 8.17.2.1 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.2.3.2 Application-supplied format | 8-131 | 8.17.2.1 | 8-184 |
| 8.7.3.1.1 User-specified destinations | 8-131 | 8.17.4.1 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.1.2 Editing address fields | 8-131 | 8.17.4.2 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.1.3 Listing other users on-line | 8-131 | 8.15.9.3 | 8-170 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-----------|-------|
| 8.7.3.2.1 Message header fields | 8-132 | 8.17.4.2 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.2.2 Prompting | 8-132 | 8.17.4.4 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.3.1 On-line directories | 8-132 | 8.17.4.6 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.3.2 Substitute addresses | 8-132 | 8.17.4.7 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.3.3 User-defined distribution lists | 8-132 | 8.17.4.9 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.3.4.1 Valid address | 8-132 | 8.17.4.10 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.3.4.2 Error correction | 8-132 | 8.17.4.11 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.4.1.1 Automatic queuing of outgoing messages | 8-132 | 8.17.3.6 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.1.2 Appended information | 8-133 | 8.17.3.3 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.2.1 User initiation of data transmission | 8-133 | 8.17.3.1 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.2.2 What users can transmit | 8-133 | 8.17.3.2 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.2.3 User-assignable priority | 8-133 | 8.17.3.7 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.2.5 Notification of transmission and delivery | 8-133 | 8.17.3.9 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.4.2.6 Cancellation of undelivered messages | 8-133 | 8.17.3.5 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.5.1.1 Transmitted message log | 8-133 | 8.17.3.4 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.5.2.1 User-specified feedback | 8-133 | 8.17.3.9 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.5.2.2 Cancellation of messages after initiation | 8-133 | 8.17.3.5 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.5.3.1 Automatic queuing | 8-134 | 8.17.3.12 | 8-186 |
| 8.7.5.3.2 Transmission failure | 8-134 | 8.17.3.11 | 8-185 |
| 8.7.6.1.1 Incoming message queuing | 8-134 | 8.17.5.8 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.1.2 Incoming message log | 8-134 | 8.17.5.7 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.2.1 User control of incoming messages | 8-134 | 8.17.5.2 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.2.2 User control of notification of incoming messages | 8-134 | 8.17.5.1 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.2.3 Naming and describing incoming messages | 8-134 | 8.17.5.16 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.2.4 Disposing of incoming messages | 8-134 | 8.17.5.17 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.3.1 User specification of summary order | 8-134 | 8.17.5.12 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.3.2 User review of summary information | 8-134 | 8.17.5.9 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.3.3 Nondestructive review | 8-135 | 8.17.5.10 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.3.5 Annotating incoming messages | 8-135 | 8.17.5.14 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.3.6 Size indication | 8-135 | 8.17.5.13 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.4.1 Data preservation | 8-135 | 8.17.5.18 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.4.2 Notification of incompatible format | 8-135 | 8.17.5.19 | 8-188 |
| 8.7.6.5.1 Notification at log on | 8-135 | 8.17.5.3 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.5.2 Noninterfering notification | 8-135 | 8.17.5.5 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.5.3 Priority of incoming messages | 8-135 | 8.17.5.6 | 8-187 |
| 8.7.6.6.1 Automatic addressing of replies | 8-135 | 8.17.4.8 | 8-186 |
| 8.8.1.1 When to use | 8-139 | 9.1.1 | 9-4 |
| 8.8.1.2 Numeric keypads | 8-139 | 9.1.2 | 9-4 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-----------------|------|
| 8.8.1.3 VDT keyboard layout and features | 8-139 | 9.1.7, 8, 9, 10 | 9-5 |
| 8.8.1.4 Standard keyboards | 8-139 | 9.1.12 | 9-5 |
| 8.8.1.5 Cursor movement keys | 8-139 | 9.1.15 | 9-5 |
| 8.8.1.6 Changing data | 8-139 | 9.1.17 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.1.7 Keyboard equivalents to function keys | 8-139 | 9.1.18 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.1.8 Keyboard equivalents to pointing device operations | 8-139 | 9.1.19 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.2.1 Standardization | 8-140 | 9.2.1 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.2.2 Availability | 8-140 | 9.2.2 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.2.3 Non-active keys | 8-140 | 9.2.3 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.2.4 Grouping | 8-140 | 9.2.4 | 9-6 |
| 8.8.3.1.1 Functionality | 8-140 | 9.3.1.2 | 9-7 |
| 8.8.3.1.2 Single pointer | 8-140 | 9.3.1.3 | 9-7 |
| 8.8.3.1.3 Moving the pointer | 8-140 | 9.3.1.4 | 9-7 |
| 8.8.3.1.4 Non-disappearance of pointer | 8-140 | 9.3.1.5 | 9-7 |
| 8.8.3.1.5 Control of the pointer | 8-141 | 9.3.1.6 | 9-8 |
| 8.8.3.1.6 Pointer stability | 8-141 | 9.3.1.7 | 9-8 |
| 8.8.3.1.7 Movement ratio | 8-141 | 9.3.1.8 | 9-8 |
| 8.8.3.1.8 Type of device | 8-141 | 9.3. | 9-8 |
| 8.8.3.2.1 Use | 8-142 | 9.3.2.1 | 9-9 |
| 8.8.3.2.2 Dynamic characteristics | 8-142 | 9.3.2.2 | 9-9 |
| 8.8.3.2.3 Easily moved | 8-142 | 9.3.2.3 | 9-9 |
| 8.8.3.2.4 Lateral range | 8-142 | 9.3.2.4 | 9-9 |
| 8.8.3.2.5 Dimensions and shape | 8-142 | 9.3.2.5 | 9-9 |
| 8.8.3.3.2 Activation and deactivation | 8-143 | 9.3.3.1.1 | 9-10 |
| 8.8.3.4.2 Dimensions and mounting | 8-143 | 9.3.4.1 | 9-16 |
| 8.8.3.4.3 Activation | 8-143 | 9.3.4.2 | 9-16 |
| 8.8.3.4.4 Feedback | 8-143 | 9.3.4.3 | 9-16 |
| 8.8.3.5.1 Refresh rate | 8-144 | 9.3.5.4 | 9-17 |
| 8.8.3.5.2 Remote grid size | 8-144 | 9.3.5.5 | 9-17 |
| 8.8.3.5.3 Remote grid placement | 8-144 | 9.3.5.6 | 9-17 |
| 8.8.3.6.1 General-purpose pointer shape | 8-144 | 9.3.6.1 | 9-18 |
| 8.8.3.6.2 "Hotspot" | 8-144 | 9.3.6.2 | 9-20 |
| 8.8.3.6.3 Hotspot and pointer shape | 8-144 | 9.3.6.3 | 9-20 |
| 8.8.3.6.4 Additional pointer shapes | 8-144 | 9.3.6.4 | 9-20 |
| 8.8.3.7.1 Button operations | 8-146 | 9.3.7.1 | 9-20 |
| 8.8.3.7.2 Button functions | 8-146 | 9.3.7.2 | 9-21 |
| 8.8.3.7.3 Left-right reversal | 8-146 | 9.3.7.3 | 9-21 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|-------|
| 8.8.4.1.1 Consistent interaction | 8-146 | 9.4.1.1 | 9-21 |
| 8.8.4.1.2 Type of device | 8-147 | 9.4.1.2 | 9-21 |
| 8.8.4.2.1 Use | 8-147 | 9.4.2.1 | 9-23 |
| 8.8.4.2.3 Luminance transmission | 8-147 | 9.4.2.2 | 9-23 |
| 8.8.4.2.4 Positive indication | 8-147 | 9.4.2.3 | 9-23 |
| 8.8.4.2.5 Dimensions and separation | 8-147 | 9.4.2.4 | 9-23 |
| 8.8.4.2.7 Display feedback | 8-148 | 9.4.2.5 | 9-24 |
| 8.8.5.1 Redundant control | 8-149 | 9.5.1 | 9-25 |
| 8.9.1.1 Equal access | 8-151 | 2.6.12 | 2-8 |
| 8.9.2.1 Multiple, simultaneous activities | 8-151 | 8.18.2.1 | 8-190 |
| 8.9.2.2 Timed responses | 8-152 | 8.18.2.2 | 8-190 |
| 8.9.2.3 "Pointing" from the keyboard | 8-152 | 9.6.1 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.2.4 Cursor control devices | 8-152 | 9.6.2 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.2.5 Minimal number of "small" targets | 8-152 | 8.18.2.3 | 8-190 |
| 8.9.2.7 Controls and latches | 8-152 | 6.4.1 | 6-80 |
| 8.9.2.8 Avoiding inadvertent operation | 8-152 | 9.6.3 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.3.1 Connection point for alternative output devices | 8-153 | 9.6.5 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.4.1 Enlarging a display | 8-153 | 8.18.3.1 | 8-190 |
| 8.9.4.2 Selecting display colors | 8-153 | 8.6.2 | |
| 8.9.4.3 Readability of lettering on keys and controls | 8-153 | 9.6.7 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.5.1 Connection point for alternative output devices | 8-153 | 9.6.5 | 9-26 |
| 8.9.5.2 Alternatives to input devices | 8-154 | 9.6.8 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.5.3 Nonvisual indication of state of toggle keys | 8-154 | 9.6.9 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.5.4 Key demarcation | 8-154 | 9.6.10 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.5.5 Identification of "home" keys | 8-154 | 9.6.11 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.5.6 Key labels | 8-154 | 9.6.12 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.6.1.1 Redundant visual output | 8-154 | 8.9.6.1. | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.1.2 Hearing auditory outputs | 8-154 | 8.18.4 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.1 Granularity | 8-155 | 8.18.3.3 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.2 Navigation | 8-155 | 8.18.3.4 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.3 Hear and feel consistency | 8-155 | 8.18.3.5 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.4 Dual representation | 8-155 | 8.18.3.6 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.5 Objects represented | 8-156 | 8.18.3.7 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.6 Nonoverlapping objects | 8-156 | 8.18.4.3 | 8-193 |
| 8.9.6.2.7 Eliciting an object's name | 8-156 | 8.18.3.8 | 8-192 |
| 8.9.6.2.8 Size and location of objects | 8-156 | 8.18.4.4 | 8-193 |
| 8.9.7.1 Avoiding flashing-induced seizures | 8-156 | 8.13.10.24 | 8-127 |
| 8.9.8.1 Electronic documentation | 8-156 | 8.18.1.8 | 8-190 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|--------------|-------|
| 8.9.8.2 Speech output compatibility | 8-157 | 5.11.4 | 5-25 |
| 8.9.8.3 Special display window | 8-157 | 9.6.13 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.8.4 Connection point for switches | 8-157 | 9.6.14 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.8.5 Distinguishing macro input from typed input | 8-157 | 9.6.15 | 9-27 |
| 8.9.8.6 Key guards | 8-157 | 9.6.4 | 9-26 |
| Chapter 9 | | | |
| 9.1.1 Design for human activities | 9-1 | 10.1.1 | 10-1 |
| 9.1.2 Physical accommodation | 9-1 | 10.1.2 | 10-1 |
| 9.1.3 Work space to permit access | 9-2 | 10.1.3 | 10-1 |
| 9.1.4 Maintenance independence | 9-2 | 10.1.4 | 10-2 |
| 9.1.5 Maintenance and operations interference | 9-2 | 10.1.5 | 10-2 |
| 9.1.6 Illumination compatibility with operations | 9-2 | 10.1.9 | 10-2 |
| 9.1.7 Task and general illumination of work space | 9-2 | 10.1.8 | 10-2 |
| 9.1.8 Special information and communications interfaces | 9-3 | 10.1.11 | 10-2 |
| 9.2.1.1 Traffic and congestion | 9-3 | 10.3.1.2 | 10-22 |
| 9.2.1.2 Equipment grouping | 9-3 | 10.3.1.4 | 10-24 |
| 9.2.1.3 Equipment arrangements for groups of workers | 9-3 | 10.3.1.5 | 10-25 |
| 9.2.1.4 Layout for safety | 9-4 | 10.3.1.6 | 10-23 |
| 9.2.1.5 Access interference | 9-4 | 10.3.2.7 | 10-25 |
| 9.2.1.6 No stacking | 9-4 | 4.9.3.1.2 | 4-82 |
| 9.2.1.7 Criticality for maintenance | 9-4 | 4.3.4.2.1 | 4-21 |
| 9.2.1.8 Frequency of maintenance | 9-4 | 4.3.4.2.1 | 4-21 |
| 9.2.1.9 Visual access | 9-4 | 10.3.2.10 | 10-26 |
| 9.2.1.10 Clear visual inspection | 9-4 | 10.3.2.11 | 10-26 |
| 9.2.1.11 Front removal | 9-4 | 10.3.2.12 | 10-26 |
| 9.2.1.12 Floor space for work and passage | 9-4 | 10.3.1.9 | 10-23 |
| 9.2.1.13 Depth of the work area | 9-5 | 10.3.1.10,11 | 10-23 |
| 9.2.1.14 Lateral work space | 9-5 | 10.3.1.12 | 10-24 |
| 9.2.1.15 Rear access space | 9-5 | 10.3.1.13 | 10-24 |
| 9.2.2.1.1 Access space for effective maintenance | 9-6 | 10.3.2.2 | 10-24 |
| 9.2.2.1.2 Panels and access doors | 9-6 | 10.3.2.4 | 10-25 |
| 9.2.2.1.3 Component locations for access | 9-6 | 10.3.2.5 | 10-25 |
| 9.2.2.2.1 Kick space | 9-7 | 10.2.6.8 | 10-19 |
| 9.2.2.3.1 Work surfaces for standing positions | 9-7 | 10.2.7.1 | 10-19 |
| 9.2.2.3.2 Work surfaces for seated positions | 9-7 | 10.2.7.2 | 10-20 |
| 9.2.2.3.3 Writing surfaces | 9-7 | 10.2.7.3 | 10-20 |
| 9.2.2.3.4 Task sizing of work surfaces | 9-7 | 10.2.7.4 | 10-20 |
| 9.2.2.4.1 Storage space | 9-7 | 10.2.8.1 | 10-20 |

| | | | |
|--|------|------------------|-------|
| 9.2.3.1 Sizing | 9-8 | 10.2.9.1 | 10-20 |
| 9.2.3.2 Special equipment | 9-8 | 10.2.9.2 | 10-20 |
| 9.3.1.1 Corridors | 9-8 | 10.4.1.2 | 10-27 |
| 9.3.1.2 Added clearance | 9-8 | 10.4.1.3 | 10-27 |
| 9.3.1.3 Floors | 9-8 | 10.4.1.4 | 10-27 |
| 9.3.1.4 Traffic areas | 9-9 | 10.3.1.1 | 10-24 |
| 9.3.2.2 Access and rescue in special passageways | 9-10 | 10.4.7.5.7 | 10-41 |
| 9.3.2.3 Guardrails and nonskid surfaces | 9-10 | 10.4.6.3.3 | 10-36 |
| 9.3.2.5 Minimum catwalk width | 9-10 | 10.4.5.1 | 10-30 |
| 9.3.2.6 Enclosed space ventilation | 9-10 | 10.4.5.2 | 10-30 |
| 9.3.2.7 Movement or work without mechanical aid | 9-10 | 10.4.5.3 | 10-30 |
| 9.3.3.1.2 Hands free work area | 9-11 | 10.4.6.1.1 | 10-30 |
| 9.3.3.1.3 Permissible gaps with equipment | 9-11 | 10.4.6.1.3 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.1.4 Platform strength | 9-11 | 10.4.6.1.5 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.1.5 Test equipment support | 9-11 | 10.4.6.1.6 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.2.1 Portable platforms | 9-11 | 10.4.6.2.1 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.2.2 Platform wheels and brakes | 9-11 | 10.4.6.2.2 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.3.1 Surfaces for platforms and work areas | 9-11 | 10.4.6.1.8 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.4.1 Guardrails | 9-11 | 10.4.6.3.2 | 10-31 |
| 9.3.3.4.2 Guardrail dimensions | 9-12 | 10.4.6.3.3 | 10-32 |
| 9.3.3.4.3 Toe board or guard screen | 9-12 | 10.4.6.3.4 | 10-32 |
| 9.3.3.4.4 Handholds | 9-12 | 10.4.6.3.5 | 10-32 |
| 9.3.3.4.5 Handholds, guardrails for adverse conditions or motion | 9-12 | 10.4.6.3.6 | 10-32 |
| 9.3.3.5.1 Elevators, inclinators, and hydraulic work platforms | 9-12 | 10.4.6.4.1 | 10-33 |
| 9.3.3.5.2 Designed-in safety features | 9-13 | 10.4.6.4.2 | 10-33 |
| 9.3.4.1.1 Routine | 9-13 | 10.4.7.1.1 ,2 | 10-33 |
| 9.3.4.1.2 Population accommodation | 9-13 | 10.1.2 | 10-1 |
| 9.3.4.2.1 Door dimensions | 9-13 | 10.4.7.2.1 | 10-34 |
| 9.3.4.2.3 Door clearances | 9-14 | 10.4.7.2.3 | 10-34 |
| 9.3.4.2.4 Door opening direction | 9-14 | 10.4.7.2.4 | 10-34 |
| 9.3.4.2.5 Doors for two people | 9-14 | 10.4.7.2 | 10-34 |
| 9.3.4.2.6 Door size or quantities | 9-14 | 10.4.7.2 | 10-34 |
| 9.3.4.3.1 Sliding and folding doors | 9-15 | 10.4.7.3.1 | 10-35 |
| 9.3.4.3.2 Swinging doors | 9-15 | 10.4.7.3.2 | 10-35 |
| 9.3.4.3.3 Revolving doors | 9-15 | 10.4.7.3.5 | 10-35 |
| 9.3.4.3.4 Floor to ceiling glass doors or windows | 9-15 | 10.4.7.3.6 | 10-35 |
| 9.3.4.4.1 Space for exit | 9-15 | 10.4.7.4.1 | 10-36 |
| 9.3.4.4.2 Emergency door and exit design and construction | 9-15 | 10.4.7.4.2 | 10-36 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------------|-------|
| 9.3.4.4.3 Changes in elevation in a "way of exit" | 9-16 | 10.4.8.1 | 10-39 |
| 9.3.4.5.2 Flush with surfaces | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.1 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.3 Hatch opening motion | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.2 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.4 Hatch opening and closing forces | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.3, 4 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.5 Clearance dimensions for hatches | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.5 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.6 Limiting dimensions for hatches | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.6 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.7 Rescue requirements | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.7 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.5.8 Rectangular hatch minimums | 9-17 | 10.4.7.5.8 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.6.1 Whole body access | 9-18 | 10.4.7.6.1 | 10-37 |
| 9.3.4.6.2 Emergency escape hatches | 9-18 | 10.4.7.6.3 | 10-38 |
| 9.3.4.6.3 Floor hatches and open holes | 9-19 | 10.4.6.3.3 | 10-32 |
| 9.3.5.1.1 Selection | 9-19 | 10.4.8.1.2 | 10-39 |
| 9.3.5.1.3 For heavy carrying | 9-20 | 10.4.8.1.3 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.1 Material characteristics | 9-20 | 10.4.8.1.4 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.2 Carrying strength of the structure | 9-20 | 10.4.8.1.5 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.3 Nonskid floor surfaces | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.6 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.4 Warning labels | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.7 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.5 Handrails | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.8 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.2.6 Proper illumination | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.10 | 10-40 |
| 9.3.5.3.1 Dimensions for ramps | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.12, 13 | 10-41 |
| 9.3.5.3.2 Ramps for pushing and pulling equipment on arts | 9-21 | 10.4.8.1.14 | 10-42 |
| 9.3.5.3.3 Combined vehicular or cart and personnel traffic | 9-22 | 10.4.8.1.15 | 10-42 |
| 9.3.5.3.4 Handrails for ramps | 9-22 | 10.4.8.2.1 | 10-43 |
| 9.3.5.3.5 Nonskid materials for ramps | 9-22 | 10.4.8.2.2 | 10-43 |
| 9.3.5.3.6 Ramp landings | 9-23 | 10.4.8.2.3 | 10-43 |
| 9.3.5.4.1 Dimensions for stairs | 9-23 | 10.4.8.3.1 | 10-44 |
| 9.3.5.4.2 Landings, stair lengths, riser, and tread dimensions | 9-23 | 10.4.8.3.2, 4 | 10-44 |
| 9.3.5.4.3 Open tread and protection beneath | 9-23 | 10.4.8.3.5 | 10-44 |
| 9.3.5.4.4 Stair design for load carrying | 9-23 | 10.4.8.3.6 | 10-45 |
| 9.3.5.5.1 Dimensions for stair ladders | 9-25 | 10.4.8.4.1 | 10-46 |
| 9.3.5.5.2 Two way traffic with stair ladders | 9-26 | 10.4.8.4.2 | 10-47 |
| 9.3.5.5.3 Open treads and protection | 9-26 | 10.4.8.4.3 | 10-47 |
| 9.3.5.6.1 Dimensions for fixed ladders | 9-26 | 10.4.8.5.1 | 10-48 |
| 9.3.5.6.2 Guarded landings, entrances, and cages | 9-26 | 10.4.8.5.2 | 10-48 |
| 9.3.5.6.3 Rungs versus level steps | 9-28 | 10.4.8.5.5 | 10-49 |
| 9.3.5.6.4 Tread and tread rise | 9-28 | 10.4.8.5.7 | 10-49 |
| 9.3.5.7.1 Dimensions for portable ladders | 9-28 | 10.4.8.6.1 | 10-50 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|----------------|-------|
| 9.3.5.7.2 Lifting ladders | 9-30 | 10.4.8.6.2 | 10-51 |
| 9.3.5.7.3 Ladder hinges and locks | 9-30 | 10.4.8.6.3 | 10-51 |
| 9.3.5.7.4 Weather implications for portable ladders | 9-30 | 10.4.8.6.4 | 10-51 |
| 9.4.1 Static dimensions for common body positions | 9-31 | 14.3.2.1 | 14-14 |
| 9.4.2.1 Mobile work space approval | 9-36 | 14.1.4.2 | 14-8 |
| 9.4.2.2 Mobile work space dimensions | 9-36 | 14.1.4.2 | 14-8 |
| 9.4.3.1 Standing workplace and workbench dimensions | 9-38 | 10.2.6.1 | 10-16 |
| 9.4.4.3 Swivels and rollers | 9-40 | 10.2.2.1 | 10-6 |
| 9.4.4.4 Seating dimensions | 9-40 | 10.2.2.2 | 10-6 |
| 9.4.4.5 Knee space | 9-42 | 10.2.2.3,.4 | 10-8 |
| 9.4.4.6 Seat cushioning | 9 -42 | 10.2.2.5 | 10-8 |
| 9.4.4.7 The use of armrests | 9-42 | 10.2.2.7 | 10-8 |
| 9.4.4.9 Footrests | 9-43 | 10.2.2.11 | 10-9 |
| 9.4.4.10 Temporary seats | 9-43 | 10.2.2.13 | 10-9 |
| 9.5.1 Sit, sit-stand,and stand consoles | 9-43 | 10.2.1 | 10-3 |
| 9.5.1.1 Dimensions for console configurations | 9-44 | 10.2.1.1 | 10-3 |
| 9.5.1.2 Selection of a standard console | 9-46 | 10.2.1.2 | 10-5 |
| 9.5.2.1 Panel width | 9-46 | 10.2.3.1 | 10-10 |
| 9.5.2.2 Panel angles | 9-46 | 10.2.3.2 | 10-10 |
| 9.5.2.3 Dimensions with vision over the top | 9-46 | 10.2.3.3 | 10-10 |
| 9.5.2.4 Width dimensions without vision over the top | 9-46 | 10.2.3.5 | 10-10 |
| 9.5.2.5 Viewing angle | 9-46 | 10.2.3.7 | 10-11 |
| 9.5.3.1 Panel division | 9-47 | 10.2.4.1 | 10-11 |
| 9.5.3.2 Height | 9-47 | 10.2.4.2 | 10-12 |
| 9.5.4.1 Selecting arrangements for team consoles | 9-47 | 10.2.5.1 | 10-12 |
| 9.5.4.2 Selecting team console types and designs | 9-49 | 10.2.5.2 | 10-15 |
| 9.5.4.3 Use of position coding | 9-50 | 6.1.1.4.3 | 6-7 |
| 9.5.4.4 Control and display placement on stand consoles | 9-51 | 10.2.6.2 | 10-17 |
| 9.5.4.5 Special team sit-stand console and work space dimensions | 9-51 | 10.2.6.5,.6 | 10-19 |
| 9.6.1 Visual display terminals, associated furniture, and office environment | 9-53 | See Chapter 10 | |
| 9.7.1 Accessibility - facilities, passageways walks, and workplaces | 9-53 | 10.4.2 | 10-27 |
| 9.7.2 Reasonable accommodation of workspace to an individual | 9-54 | 2.6.12 | 2-8 |
| Chapter 10 | | | |
| 10.1.1.1 Description of expected users | 10-2 | 15.1.1.1 | 15-2 |
| 10.1.1.2 Documentation for people at different skill levels | 10-2 | 15.1.1.2 | 15-2 |
| 10.1.2.1 Tabs | 10-3 | 15.1.2.1 | 15-3 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| 10.1.2.2 Guides to organization | 10-3 | 15.1.2.2 | 15-3 |
| 10.1.2.3 Table of contents | 10-3 | 15.1.2.3 | 15-3 |
| 10.1.2.4 Figures and examples | 10-3 | 15.1.2.4 | 15-3 |
| 10.2.1.1.1 Titles | 10-4 | 15.2.1.1.1 | 15-5 |
| 10.2.1.1.2 Paragraph titles | 10-4 | 15.2.1.1.2 | 15-5 |
| 10.2.1.1.4 Uniqueness of titles | 10-5 | 15.2.1.1.3 | 15-5 |
| 10.2.1.2.1 Decimal numbering | 10-5 | 15.2.1.2.1 | 15-5 |
| 10.2.1.2.2 Itemization within a paragraph | 10-5 | 15.2.1.2.2 | 15-5 |
| 10.2.1.2.3 Number of levels | 10-5 | 15.2.1.2.3 | 15-6 |
| 10.2.1.3.1 When to provide advance organizers | 10-6 | 15.2.1.3.1 | 15-6 |
| 10.2.1.4.1 Minimize internal cross referencing | 10-6 | 15.2.1.4.1 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.1.4.2 Form of internal cross references | 10-6 | 15.2.1.4.2 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.1.5.1 Task orientation | 10-7 | 15.2.1.5.1 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.1.5.2 List orientation | 10-7 | 15.2.1.5.2 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.2.1 Content of paragraphs | 10-7 | 15.2.2.1 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.2.2 Linking sentences | 10-7 | 15.2.2.2 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.2.3 Topic sentences | 10-7 | 15.2.2.2 | 15-7 |
| 10.2.2.4 Length of paragraphs | 10-7 | 15.2.2.3 | 15-8 |
| 10.2.3.1.1 Clear, simple language | 10-8 | 15.2.3.1.1 | 15-8 |
| 10.2.3.1.2 Technical terms | 10-8 | 15.2.3.1.2 | 15-8 |
| 10.2.3.2.1 Writing level | 10-8 | 15.2.3.2.1 | 15-8 |
| 10.2.3.3.1 Average length | 10-8 | 15.2.3.3.1 | 15-9 |
| 10.2.3.4.1 Single thought | 10-9 | 15.2.3.4.1 | 15-9 |
| 10.2.3.4.2 Subordinate clauses | 10-9 | 15.2.3.4.2 | 15-9 |
| 10.2.3.5.1 Normal order | 10-9 | 15.2.3.5.1 | 15-9 |
| 10.2.3.6.1 Active, not passive voice | 10-10 | 15.2.3.6.1 | 15-10 |
| 10.2.3.7.1 Second person imperative | 10-10 | 15.2.3.7.1 | 15-10 |
| 10.2.3.8.1 When to use positive wording | 10-10 | 15.2.3.8.1 | 15-10 |
| 10.2.3.8.2 When to use negative wording | 10-10 | 15.2.3.8.2 | 15-10 |
| 10.2.3.9.1 Consistent phrases | 10-11 | 15.2.3.9.1 | 15-11 |
| 10.2.3.9.2 Task steps | 10-11 | 15.2.3.9.2 | 15-11 |
| 10.2.3.10.1 Capitalization | 10-11 | 15.2.3.10.1 | 15-11 |
| 10.2.3.10.2 Capitalization of phrases for emphasis | 10-11 | 15.2.3.10.2 | 15-11 |
| 10.2.3.10.3 Punctuation | 10-11 | 15.2.3.10.3 | 15-11 |
| 10.2.4.1.1 Terminology | 10-12 | 15.2.4.1.1 | 15-12 |
| 10.2.4.2.1 High-frequency words | 10-12 | 15.2.4.2.1 | 15-12 |
| 10.2.4.2.2 Short words | 10-12 | 15.2.4.2.2 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.2.3 Simple words | 10-13 | 15.2.4.2.3 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.3.1 Concrete versus abstract words | 10-13 | 15.2.4.3.1 | 15-13 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-------------|-------|
| 10.2.4.3.2 Ambiguous words | 10-13 | 15.2.4.3.2 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.3.3 Indefinite words and terms | 10-13 | 15.2.4.3.3 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.3.4 Variations on flammable | 10-13 | 15.2.4.3.4 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.5.1 If, when, and where | 10-13 | 15.2.4.4.1 | 15-13 |
| 10.2.4.5.2 Shall, should, may, and will | 10-14 | 15.2.4.4.2 | 15-14 |
| 10.2.4.6.1 Unambiguous referents | 10-14 | 15.2.4.5 | 15-14 |
| 10.2.4.7.1 What to define | 10-14 | 15.2.4.6.1 | 15-14 |
| 10.2.4.7.2 When to define | 10-14 | 15.2.4.6.2 | 15-14 |
| 10.2.4.7.4 Glossary | 10-14 | 15.2.4.7.3 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.1 Use | 10-14 | 12.2.4.7.1 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.2 Definition of abbreviations and acronyms | 10-15 | 15.2.4.7.2 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.4 Glossary | 10-16 | 15.2.4.7.3 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.5 Standard abbreviations and acronyms | 10-16 | 15.2.4.7.4 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.6 Nonstandard abbreviations | 10-16 | 15.2.4.7.5 | 15-15 |
| 10.2.4.8.7 Units of measurement | 10-16 | 15.2.4.7.6 | 15-16 |
| 10.2.4.9.1 Spelling | 10-16 | 15.2.4.8.1 | 15-16 |
| 10.2.4.10.1 Numerals versus words | 10-17 | 15.2.4.9.1 | 15-16 |
| 10.2.4.10.2 Arabic numerals | 10-17 | 15.2.4.9.2 | 15-16 |
| 10.2.4.10.3 Decimals versus fractions | 10-17 | 15.2.4.9.3 | 15-16 |
| 10.2.4.10.4 Decimals and leading and trailing zeros | 10-17 | 15.2.4.9.4 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.11.1 Dual units | 10-17 | 15.2.4.10.1 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.11.2 Conversion of units | 10-17 | 15.2.4.10.2 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.12.1 Letter symbols for semiconductor devices | 10-18 | 15.2.4.11.1 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.13.1 Standard graphic symbols | 10-18 | 15.2.4.12.1 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.13.2 Mechanical diagram symbols | 10-18 | 15.2.4.12.2 | 15-17 |
| 10.2.4.13.3 Logic diagram symbols | 10-18 | 15.2.4.12.3 | 15-18 |
| 10.2.4.14.1 Flow chart symbols | 10-18 | 15.2.4.13.1 | 15-18 |
| 10.2.4.14.2 Special symbols | 10-18 | 15.2.4.13.2 | 15-18 |
| 10.3.1.1.1 Basic size | 10-19 | 15.3.1.1.1 | 15-18 |
| 10.3.1.1.3 Avoidance of odd sizes | 10-19 | 15.3.1.1.2 | 15-18 |
| 10.3.1.2.1 Page orientation | 10-20 | 15.3.1.2.1 | 15-19 |
| 10.3.1.2.2 Flat-lying | 10-20 | 15.3.1.2.2 | 15-19 |
| 10.3.1.2.3 Easy updating | 10-20 | 15.3.1.2.3 | 15-19 |
| 10.3.2.1.1 Consistency | 10-20 | 15.3.2.1.1 | 15-19 |
| 10.3.2.1.2 Pages 8.5 by 11 inches (21.6 by 27.9 cm) or larger | 10-20 | 15.3.2.1.2 | 15-20 |
| 10.3.2.1.4 Offset for binding | 10-21 | 15.3.2.1.3 | 15-20 |
| 10.3.2.2.2 Use of headers and footers | 10-21 | 15.3.2.2.1 | 15-20 |
| 10.3.2.2.3 Location of information within a header or footer | 10-21 | 15.3.2.2.2 | 15-20 |
| 10.3.2.2.4 Headers, footers, and margins | 10-22 | 15.3.2.2.3 | 15-21 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------|-------|
| 10.3.2.3.1 Representational vertical spacing | 10-22 | 15.3.2.3.1 | 15-21 |
| 10.3.2.3.2 Horizontal spacing (indentation) | 10-22 | 15.3.2.3.2 | 15-21 |
| 10.3.2.5.1 Major divisions of the document | 10-23 | 15.3.2.4.1 | 15-22 |
| 10.3.2.5.2 Page numbering of left and right handed pages | 10-23 | 15.3.2.4.2 | 15-22 |
| 10.3.2.6.1 Arabic numerals | 10-24 | 15.3.2.5.1 | 15-23 |
| 10.3.2.6.2 Numbering style - body | 10-24 | 15.3.2.5.2 | 15-23 |
| 10.3.2.6.3 Numbering style - front material | 10-24 | 15.3.2.5.3 | 15-23 |
| 10.3.2.6.4 Numbering style - Appendixes | 10-24 | 15.3.2.5.4 | 15-23 |
| 10.3.2.6.5 Location | 10-24 | 15.3.2.5.5 | 15-23 |
| 10.3.2.7.1 Number of columns | 10-24 | 15.3.2.6.1 | 15-24 |
| 10.3.2.8.1 Minimize use | 10-25 | 15.3.2.7.1 | 15-24 |
| 10.3.2.8.2 Foldout to the right | 10-25 | 15.3.2.7.2 | 15-24 |
| 10.3.2.8.4 Visibility of page number and caption | 10-25 | 15.3.2.7.3 | 15-24 |
| 10.3.2.8.5 Visibility of entire exhibit | 10-25 | 15.3.2.7.4 | 15-24 |
| 10.3.2.8.6 Location of foldout pages | 10-25 | 15.3.2.7.4 | 15-25 |
| 10.3.3.1.1 Basic size | 10-26 | 15.3.3.1.1 | 15-25 |
| 10.3.3.1.2 Minimum size | 10-26 | 15.3.3.1.2 | 15-25 |
| 10.3.3.1.3 Unequal spacing of sizes | 10-26 | 15.3.3.1.3 | 15-26 |
| 10.3.3.2.1 Line length | 10-27 | 15.3.3.2.1 | 15-26 |
| 10.3.3.3.1 Minimum spacing | 10-27 | 15.3.3.3.1 | 15-26 |
| 10.3.3.4.1 Justification of text | 10-28 | 15.3.3.4.1 | 15-27 |
| 10.3.3.4.2 Appropriate use of right-justification | 10-28 | 15.3.3.4.2 | 15-27 |
| 10.3.3.4.3 Avoiding hyphenation | 10-28 | 15.3.3.4.3 | 15-27 |
| 10.3.3.5.1 Serifs for basic font | 10-28 | 15.3.3.5.1 | 15-28 |
| 10.3.3.5.2 Minimize different fonts | 10-28 | 15.3.3.5.2 | 15-28 |
| 10.3.3.6.2 Words to be typed in upper case letters | 10-29 | 15.3.3.6.2 | 15-28 |
| 10.3.3.6.3 Minimize use of upper case letters | 10-29 | 15.3.3.6.3 | 15-28 |
| 10.3.3.7.1 Inform the reader | 10-29 | 15.3.3.7.1 | 15-29 |
| 10.3.3.7.2 Use boldface type for emphasis | 10-29 | 15.3.3.7.2 | 15-29 |
| 10.3.3.7.3 Use typographic emphasis sparingly | 10-29 | 15.3.3.7.3 | 15-29 |
| 10.3.3.7.4 Do not use underlining for emphasis | 10-29 | 15.3.3.7.4 | 15-29 |
| 10.3.3.7.5 Do not use italics for emphasis | 10-30 | 15.3.3.7.5 | 15-30 |
| 10.3.3.7.6 Do not use upper case letters for emphasis | 10-30 | 15.3.3.7.6 | 15-30 |
| 10.3.3.8.1 Adequate print contrast | 10-30 | 15.3.3.8.1 | 15-30 |
| 10.3.3.9.1 Color as a typographic cue | 10-31 | 15.3.3.9.1 | 15-31 |
| 10.3.3.9.2 Text in color | 10-31 | 15.3.3.9.2 | 15-31 |
| 10.3.3.9.3 Subsequent reproduction | 10-31 | 15.3.3.9.3 | 15-31 |
| 10.4.1.1 Contents of cover page | 10-33 | 15.4.1.1 | 15-34 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------|-------|
| 10.4.1.2 Type style and size, 8.5 by 11 inch (21.6 by 27.9 cm) pages | 10-33 | 15.4.1.2 | 15-34 |
| 10.4.2.1 When to include a table of contents | 10-34 | 15.4.2.1 | 15-34 |
| 10.4.2.2 Labeling the table of contents | 10-34 | 15.4.2.2 | 15-34 |
| 10.4.2.3 What to include in the table of contents | 10-34 | 15.4.2.3 | 15-34 |
| 10.4.2.4 Right-hand page | 10-34 | 15.4.2.4 | 15-35 |
| 10.4.3.1 When to use lists of exhibits | 10-35 | 15.4.3.1 | 15-35 |
| 10.4.3.2 Contents of lists of exhibits | 10-35 | 15.4.3.2 | 15-35 |
| 10.4.3.3 Location and precedence of lists | 10-35 | 15.4.3.3 | 15-35 |
| 10.4.4.1.1 When to use | 10-35 | 15.4.4.1.1 | 15-36 |
| 10.4.4.1.2 Relationship to text | 10-35 | 15.4.4.1.2 | 15-36 |
| 10.4.4.2.1 Number and title | 10-35 | 15.4.4.2.1 | 15-36 |
| 10.4.4.2.2 Caption | 10-36 | 15.4.4.2.2 | 15-36 |
| 10.4.4.3.2 Preferred location | 10-36 | 15.4.4.3.1 | 15-36 |
| 10.4.4.3.3 Consistent location | 10-36 | 15.4.4.3.2 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.1 Consistent style | 10-36 | 15.4.4.4.1 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.2 Preferred pictorial style | 10-36 | 15.4.4.4.2 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.3 Consistent pictorial style | 10-36 | 15.4.4.4.3 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.4 Minimal distraction | 10-36 | 15.4.4.4.4 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.5 Alphanumeric information | 10-37 | 15.4.4.4.5 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.6 Line width | 10-37 | 15.4.4.4.6 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.4.7 Color | 10-37 | 15.4.4.4.7 | 15-37 |
| 10.4.4.5.1 Amount of detail | 10-37 | 15.4.4.5.1 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.5.2 Callouts | 10-37 | 15.4.4.5.2 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.5.3 Specific types of diagrams | 10-37 | 15.4.4.5.3 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.6.1 Preferred orientation | 10-37 | 15.4.4.6.1 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.6.2 Alternate orientation | 10-38 | 15.4.4.6.2 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.7.1 Facing pages | 10-38 | 15.4.4.7.1 | 15-38 |
| 10.4.4.7.2 Captions for divided figures | 10-38 | 15.4.4.7.2 | 15-39 |
| 10.4.4.7.3 Foldout pages | 10-38 | 15.4.4.7.3 | 15-39 |
| 10.4.5.1.1. When to use | 10-38 | 15.4.5.1.1 | 15-39 |
| 10.4.5.2.1 Number and title | 10-38 | 15.4.5.2.1 | 15-39 |
| 10.4.5.2.2 Caption | 10-39 | 15.4.5.2.2 | 15-39 |
| 10.4.5.3.2 Preferred location | 10-39 | 15.4.5.3.1 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.3.3 Consistent location | 10-39 | 15.4.5.3.2 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.4.1 Organization | 10-39 | 15.4.5.4.1 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.4.2 Type size | 10-39 | 15.4.5.4.2 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.4.4 Units of measurement | 10-39 | 15.4.5.4.3 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.4.5 Ease of reading | 10-39 | 15.4.5.4.4 | 15-40 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|------------|-------|
| 10.4.5.5.1 Useful and relevant | 10-40 | 15.4.5.5.1 | 15-40 |
| 10.4.5.5.2 Nonredundant information | 10-40 | 15.4.5.5.2 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.5.6.1 Preferred orientation | 10-40 | 15.4.5.6.1 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.5.6.2 Alternate orientation | 10-40 | 15.4.5.6.2 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.5.7.1 Facing pages | 10-40 | 15.4.5.7.1 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.5.7.2 Captions for divided tables | 10-40 | 15.4.5.7.2 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.5.7.3 Foldout pages | 10-40 | 15.4.5.7.3 | 15-41 |
| 10.4.6.3 Marks | 10-41 | 15.4.6.1 | 15-42 |
| 10.4.6.5 Punctuation - items | 10-41 | 15.4.6.2 | 15-42 |
| 10.4.7.1 Identification | 10-41 | 15.4.7.1 | 15-42 |
| 10.4.7.2 Location | 10-42 | 15.4.7.2 | 15-42 |
| 10.4.7.3 Format | 10-42 | 15.4.7.3 | 15-42 |
| 10.4.8.1 Format | 10-42 | 15.4.8.1 | |
| 10.4.8.2 Warnings | 10-42 | 15.4.8.2 | |
| 10.4.8.3 Cautions | 10-42 | 15.4.8.3 | |
| 10.4.8.4 Notes | 10-42 | 15.4.8.4 | |
| 10.4.8.5 Precedence of warnings, cautions, and notes | 10-43 | 15.4.8.5 | 15-44 |
| 10.4.8.6 No procedural steps | 10-43 | 15.4.8.6 | 15-44 |
| 10.4.9.1 When to use | 10-43 | 15.4.9.1 | 15-44 |
| 10.4.9.2 Relation to main body | 10-43 | 15.4.9.2 | 15-44 |
| 10.4.9.3 Identification | 10-43 | 15.4.9.3 | 15-44 |
| 10.4.9.5 Page numbering | 10-43 | 15.4.9.4 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.9.6 Pagination | 10-44 | 15.4.9.5 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.10.1 Terms | 10-44 | 15.4.10.1 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.10.2 Format | 10-44 | 15.4.10.2 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.10.3 Location | 10-44 | 15.4.11.4 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.11.1 When to use | 10-44 | 15.4.11.1 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.11.2 Format and content | 10-44 | 15.4.11.2 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.11.3 Level of detail | 10-44 | 15.4.11.3 | 15-45 |
| 10.4.12.1 When to use | 10-44 | 15.4.12.1 | 15-46 |
| 10.4.12.2 Location | 10-45 | 15.4.12.2 | 15-46 |
| 10.4.12.3 Content | 10-45 | 15.4.12.3 | 15-46 |
| 10.4.12.4 Number of copies | 10-45 | 15.4.12.4 | 15-49 |
| 10.4.13.1 When to use | 10-45 | 15.4.13.1 | 15-49 |
| 10.4.14.1 Minimize use of footnotes | 10-45 | 15.4.14.1 | 15-49 |
| 10.4.14.2 Identification | 10-48 | 15.4.14.2 | 15-49 |
| 10.4.14.3 Location | 10-48 | 15.4.14.3 | 15-50 |
| 10.4.15.1 Copyrighted documents | 10-48 | 15.4.15.1 | 15-50 |
| 10.4.15.2 Inclusion of copyrighted or patented material | 10-48 | 15.4.15.2 | 15-50 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-------------|-------|
| 10.4.16.1 Location | 10-48 | 15.4.16.1 | 15-50 |
| 10.5.1.1.1 Procedures, tasks, subtasks, and steps | 10-49 | 15.5.1.1.1 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.1.2 Level of detail | 10-49 | 15.5.1.1.2 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.1.3 Completeness | 10-49 | 15.5.1.1.3 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.1.4 Safety considerations | 10-49 | 15.5.1.1.4 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.1.5 General safety instructions | 10-49 | 15.5.1.1.5 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.2.1 Hierarchical, logical, and consistent | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.1 | 15-51 |
| 10.5.1.2.2 Identifying information | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.2 | 15-52 |
| 10.5.1.2.3 Title | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.3 | 15-52 |
| 10.5.1.2.4 Headings | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.4 | 15-52 |
| 10.5.1.2.5 Numbered steps | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.5 | 15-52 |
| 10.5.1.2.6 Supporting information | 10-50 | 15.5.1.2.6 | 15-52 |
| 10.5.1.2.7 Appendixes and attachments | 10-51 | 15.5.1.2.7 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.3.1 Step numbers and text | 10-51 | 15.5.1.3.1 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.3.2 Check off provision | 10-51 | 15.5.1.3.2 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.3.3 Lists | 10-51 | 15.5.1.3.3 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.3.4 Illustrations | 10-51 | 15.5.1.3.4 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.4.2 Justification | 10-52 | 15.3.3.4 | 15-27 |
| 10.5.1.4.3 Typographic emphasis | 10-52 | 15.3.3.7 | 15-29 |
| 10.5.1.5.1 Completeness | 10-52 | 15.5.1.4.1 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.5.2 Grammar | 10-52 | 15.5.1.4.2 | 15-53 |
| 10.5.1.5.3 Capitalization, punctuation, and hyphenation | 10-52 | 15.2.3.10 | 15-11 |
| 10.5.1.5.4 Action statements and indication statements | 10-52 | 15.5.1.4.3 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.5.6 Sentences | 10-52 | 15.2.3 | 15-8 |
| 10.5.1.5.7 Words and symbols | 10-52 | 15.2.4 | 15-12 |
| 10.5.1.5.8 Standard steps | 10-52 | 15.5.1.4.4 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.5.9 Conditional steps | 10-53 | 15.5.1.4.5 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.5.10 No calculations | 10-53 | 15.5.1.4.6 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.5.11 Numerical precision | 10-53 | 15.5.1.4.7 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.5.12 Numerical ranges | 10-53 | 15.5.1.4.8 | 15-54 |
| 10.5.1.6.1 Use | 10-53 | 15.5.2.5.1 | |
| 10.5.1.7.1 Minimize use | 10-53 | 15.5.1.5.1 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.7.2 Explicit instructions | 10-54 | 15.5.1.5.2 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.7.3 Content | 10-54 | 15.5.1.5.3 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.8.1 Simultaneous actions or indications | 10-54 | 1.5.5.1.6.1 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.8.2 Format for diagnostic steps | 10-54 | 15.5.1.6.2 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.8.3 Nonsequential steps | 10-54 | 15.5.1.6.3 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.8.4 Verification steps | 10-54 | 15.5.1.6.4 | 15-55 |
| 10.5.1.8.5 Equally-acceptable steps | 10-54 | 15.5.1.6.5 | 15-56 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| 10.5.1.8.6 Actions performed from memory | 10-54 | 15.5.1.6.6 | 15-56 |
| 10.5.1.8.7 Procedures involving more than one person | 10-55 | 15.5.1.6.7 | 15-56 |
| 10.5.2.1.1 Contents | 10-55 | 15.5.2.1.1 | 15-56 |
| 10.5.2.1.2 Access to contents | 10-55 | 15.5.2.1.1 | 15-56 |
| 10.5.2.1.3 Help information | 10-55 | 15.5.2.1.2 | 15-57 |
| 10.5.2.1.4 Safety summary | 10-56 | 15.5.2.1.3 | 15-58 |
| 10.5.2.2.1 Applicable information | 10-56 | 15.5.2.2.1 | 15-58 |
| 10.5.2.2.2 Level of detail | 10-56 | 15.5.2.2.2 | 15-58 |
| 10.5.2.2.3 Procedures in steps | 10-56 | 15.5.2.2.3 | 15-58 |
| 10.5.2.2.4 Accommodating novice and expert skill levels | 10-56 | 15.5.2.2.4 | 15-58 |
| 10.5.2.2.5 Writing the text | 10-57 | see 10.2 | |
| 10.5.2.3.1 General requirements | 10-57 | 8.3 | 8-31 |
| 10.5.2.3.2 Minimum quality | 10-57 | 15.5.2.3.1 | 15-59 |
| 10.5.2.3.3 Interaction with graphics | 10-57 | 15.5.2.3.2 | 15-59 |
| 10.5.2.3.4 Detail and context | 10-57 | 15.5.2.3.3 | 15-59 |
| 10.5.2.3.5 Citations of equipment nomenclature | 10-57 | 15.5.2.3.4 | 15-59 |
| 10.5.2.3.6 Angle of view | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.5 | 15-59 |
| 10.5.2.3.7 Use of a human figure | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.6 | 15-60 |
| 10.5.2.3.8 Callouts | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.7 | 15-60 |
| 10.5.2.3.9 Schematic and wiring diagrams | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.8 | 15-60 |
| 10.5.2.3.10 Functional flow diagrams | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.9 | 15-60 |
| 10.5.2.3.11 Locator graphics | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.10 | 15-60 |
| 10.5.2.3.12 Placement of locator graphics | 10-58 | 15.5.2.3.11 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.3.13 Exploded item views | 10-59 | 15.5.2.3.12 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.3.14 Minimum size of a locator graphic | 10-59 | 15.5.2.3.13 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.3.15 Animated information | 10-59 | 15.5.2.3.14 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.3.16 Video controls | 10-59 | 15.5.2.3.15 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.4.1 Redundant visual information | 10-59 | 15.5.2.4.1 | 15-61 |
| 10.5.2.4.2 When to use nonverbal auditory signals | 10-59 | 15.5.2.4.2 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.4.3 When to use computer-generated and electronically-stored speech | 10-59 | 15.5.2.4.3 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.4.4 Audio controls | 10-59 | 15.5.2.4.4 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.4.5 Pronunciation of abbreviations | 10-60 | 15.5.2.4.5 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.4.6 Pronunciation of alphanumeric strings | 10-60 | 15.5.2.4.6 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.5.1 When to include warnings and cautions | 10-60 | 15.5.2.5.1 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.5.2 Readable and comprehensible | 10-60 | 15.5.2.5.2 | 15-62 |
| 10.5.2.5.3 Association of warnings and cautions with text | 10-60 | 15.5.2.5.3 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.5.4 Location of warnings, cautions, and notes | 10-60 | 15.5.2.5.4 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.5.5 Color in warnings, caution, and note displays | 10-61 | 15.5.2.5.5 | 15-63 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-------------|-------|
| 10.5.2.5.6 Borders for warnings, cautions, and notes | 10-61 | 15.5.2.5.6 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.5.7 When to use notes | 10-61 | 15.5.2.5.7 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.5.8 Association of notes with text | 10-61 | 15.5.2.5.8 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.6.1 Dialog boxes | 10-61 | 15.5.2.6.1 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.6.2 Dialogs | 10-61 | 15.5.2.6.2 | 15-63 |
| 10.5.2.6.3 Prompts | 10-61 | 15.5.2.6.3 | 15-64 |
| 10.5.2.6.4 Changing responses to prompts | 10-61 | 15.5.6.4 | 15-64 |
| 10.5.2.6.5 Alert dialogs | 10-61 | 8.14.4 | 8-146 |
| 10.5.2.6.6 Navigation operations | 10-62 | 15.5.2.6.5 | 15-64 |
| 10.5.2.6.7 Data access operations and features | 10-62 | 15.5.2.6.6 | 15-64 |
| 10.5.2.7.1 User-manual interaction | 10-63 | 8.1 | 8-1 |
| 10.5.2.7.2 Display formatting | 10-63 | 8.1 | 8-1 |
| 10.5.2.7.3 Consistency | 10-63 | 15.5.2.7.1 | 15-65 |
| 10.5.2.7.4 Window presentation | 10-63 | 8.14 | 8-132 |
| 10.5.2.8.1 Form and content | 10-63 | 15.5.2.8.1 | 15-65 |
| 10.5.2.9.1 Troubleshooting logic | 10-63 | 15.5.2.9.1 | 15-66 |
| 10.5.2.9.2 Contents | 10-64 | 15.5.2.9.2 | 15-66 |
| 10.5.2.9.3 User inputs | 10-64 | 15.5.2.9.3 | 15-66 |
| 10.5.2.9.4 Predefined fault isolation sequences | 10-64 | 15.5.2.9.4 | 15-66 |
| 10.5.2.9.5 Presentation of a predefined fault isolation sequence | 10-64 | 15.5.2.9.5 | 15-66 |
| 10.5.2.9.6 Dynamically-generated fault isolation recommendations | 10-64 | 15.5.2.9.6 | 15-67 |
| 10.5.2.9.7 Presentation of dynamically-generated fault isolation recommendations | 10-65 | 15.5.2.9.7 | 15-67 |
| 10.5.2.10.1 Information available | 10-65 | 15.5.2.10.1 | 15-67 |
| 10.5.2.10.2 Accessibility of parts information | 10-65 | 15.5.2.10.2 | 15-68 |
| 10.5.2.10.3 Direct access | 10-65 | 15.5.2.10.3 | 15-68 |
| 10.5.2.11.1 Information available | 10-66 | 15.5.2.11.1 | 15-68 |
| 10.5.2.11.2 Presentation of descriptive information | 10-66 | 15.5.2.11.2 | 15-68 |
| 10.6.1 Electronic documentation | 10-66 | 15.6.1.1 | 15-69 |
| 10.6.2 Convertible format | 10-66 | 15.6.1.2 | 15-69 |
| 10.6.3 Readability and handling | 10-66 | 15.2.3.2 | 15-8 |
| 10.6.4 Understandability | 10-67 | 15.6.2 | 15-70 |
| Chapter 11 | | | |
| 11.1.4 Accreditation and certification | 11-2 | 11.1.1 | 11-02 |
| 11.1.5 Security test and evaluation | 11-2 | 11.1.2 | 11-02 |
| 11.2.3 Automatic access control | 11-4 | 11.2.1 | 11-03 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|----------|-------|
| 11.2.5 Access control log | 11-4 | 11.2.2 | 11-03 |
| 11.3.1.2 Task simplicity | 11-5 | 11.3.1.1 | 11-03 |
| 11.3.1.3 Log on process | 11-5 | 11.3.1.2 | 11-03 |
| 11.3.1.4 Log on prompts | 11-5 | 11.3.1.3 | 11-03 |
| 11.3.1.5 Log on delay | 11-5 | 11.3.1.4 | 11-04 |
| 11.3.1.6 Unsuccessful log on attempts | 11-5 | 11.3.1.5 | 11-04 |
| 11.3.1.9 Access protection | 11-5 | 11.3.1.6 | 11-04 |
| 11.3.1.13 Continuous recognition of user identity | 11-7 | 11.3.1.7 | 11-05 |
| 11.3.2.1 Changing passwords | 11-8 | 11.3.2.1 | 11-06 |
| 11.3.2.3 Password protection | 11-8 | 11.3.2.2 | 11-06 |
| 11.3.2.4 Recording of date and time of log on | 11-8 | 11.3.2.3 | 11-06 |
| 11.4.4 Auditing users or security levels | 11-9 | 11.4.1 | 11-06 |
| 11.5.1.1 Automated security measures | 11-9 | 11.5.1.1 | 11-06 |
| 11.5.1.2 Integrity of data | 11-9 | 11.5.1.2 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.1.3 Warning of threats to security | 11-9 | 11.5.1.3 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.1.4 "Read-only" status | 11-10 | 11.5.1.4 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.1.5 Degraded system warning | 11-10 | 11.5.1.5 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.2.2 Encrypting messages | 11-10 | 11.5.2.1 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.3.1 Automatic recording of data access | 11-10 | 11.5.3.1 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.3.2 Informing users of automated record keeping | 11-10 | 11.5.3.2 | 11-07 |
| 11.5.4.1 Automatic protection of transmitted data | 11-10 | 11.5.4.1 | 11-08 |
| 11.5.4.2 Reviewing messages | 11-10 | 11.5.4.2 | 11-08 |
| 11.5.4.3 Confirmation codes | 11-11 | 11.5.4.3 | 11-08 |
| 11.6.1 User documentation | 11-11 | 11.6.1 | 11-08 |
| 11.6.2 Design documentation | 11-11 | 11.6.2 | 11-08 |
| 11.7.2 Minimize training for personnel | 11-11 | 2.6.6 | 2-6 |
| Chapter 12 | | | |
| 12.1.1 Safety factors | 12-1 | 12.1.1 | 12-1 |
| 12.2.1.1 Hazard alerting or alarm device | 12-1 | 12.2.1.1 | 12-1 |
| 12.2.1.2 Location | 12-1 | 12.2.1.2 | 12-1 |
| 12.2.1.3 Redundant hazard alerting or alarm devices | 12-1 | 12.2.1.3 | 12-2 |
| 12.2.1.4 Physical barriers | 12-1 | 12.2.1.4 | 12-2 |
| 12.2.1.5 Obstruction-free | 12-2 | 12.2.1.5 | 12-2 |
| 12.2.1.6 Emergency door and exit design and construction | 12-2 | 12.2.1.6 | 12-3 |
| 12.2.1.7 Nonskid surfaces | 12-2 | 12.2.1.7 | 12-3 |
| 12.2.1.8 Illumination | 12-3 | 12.2.1.8 | 12-4 |
| 12.2.2.1 Self-locking devices | 12-3 | 12.2.2.1 | 12-4 |
| 12.2.2.2 High centers of gravity | 12-3 | 12.2.2.2 | 12-4 |

| | | | |
|--|------|-----------|-------|
| 12.2.2.3 Safety measures | 12-3 | 12.2.2.3 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.4 Toe board or guard screen | 12-4 | 12.2.2.4 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.5 Safety mesh | 12-4 | 12.2.2.5 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.6 Telescoping ladders | 12-4 | 12.2.2.6 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.7 De-icing ladders and steps | 12-4 | 12.2.2.7 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.8 Handholds | 12-4 | 12.2.2.8 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.9 Nonfixed handholds | 12-4 | 12.2.2.9 | 12-5 |
| 12.2.2.10 Fixed handholds | 12-4 | 12.2.2.10 | 12-5 |
| 12.3.1 Hazardous operations | 12-4 | 12.3.1 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.2 Accessibility | 12-5 | 12.3.2 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.3 Test equipment stability | 12-5 | 12.3.3 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.4 Equipment with wheels | 12-5 | 12.3.4 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.5 Mechanically stored energy devices | 12-5 | 12.3.5 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.6 Safety features | 12-5 | 12.3.6 | 12-6 |
| 12.3.7 Equipment coloring | 12-5 | 12.3.7 | 12-6 |
| 12.4.1.1 Protection from electric shock | 12-6 | 12.4.1.1 | 12-8 |
| 12.4.1.2 Rubber insulating equipment | 12-7 | 12.4.1.2 | 12-8 |
| 12.4.1.3 Selection of rubber insulating equipment | 12-7 | 12.4.1.3 | 12-9 |
| 12.4.1.4 Static charge buildup | 12-7 | 12.4.1.4 | 12-9 |
| 12.4.1.5 Fail-safe | 12-7 | 12.4.1.5 | 12-9 |
| 12.4.1.6 Electrical conductors | 12-8 | 12.4.1.6 | 12-9 |
| 12.4.1.7 Power | 12-8 | 12.4.1.7 | 12-9 |
| 12.4.1.8 Covers | 12-8 | 12.4.1.8 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.9 Bypassable interlocks | 12-8 | 12.4.1.9 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.10 Nonbypassable interlocks | 12-8 | 12.4.1.10 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.11 Interlock override | 12-8 | 12.4.1.11 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.12 Medium voltage guarding | 12-8 | 12.4.1.12 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.13 High voltage guarding | 12-8 | 12.4.1.13 | 12-10 |
| 12.4.1.14 Guarding radio frequency (rf) voltages | 12-8 | 12.4.1.14 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.1.15 Explosion-proof equipment | 12-9 | 12.4.1.15 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.1.16 Plugs and receptacles | 12-9 | 12.4.1.16 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.1.17 "Hot" Leads | 12-9 | 12.4.1.17 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.1.18 Design and location of electrical installations and electrical utilization | 12-9 | 12.4.1.18 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.2.1 Main-power switches | 12-9 | 12.4.2.1 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.2.2 Main-power switch location | 12-9 | 12.4.2.2 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.2.3 Physical protection at main-power switches | 12-9 | 12.4.2.3 | 12-11 |
| 12.4.2.4 Arc prevention | 12-9 | 12.4.2.4 | 12-12 |
| 12.4.2.5 Safety switches | 12-9 | 12.4.2.5 | 12-12 |
| 12.4.2.6 Switch box safety | 12-9 | 12.4.2.6 | 12-12 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-----------|-------|
| 12.4.3.1 Bleeders | 12-10 | 12.4.3.1 | 12-12 |
| 12.4.3.2 Shorting rods | 12-10 | 12.4.3.2 | 12-12 |
| 12.4.3.3 Removing power | 12-10 | 12.4.3.3 | 12-13 |
| 12.4.3.4 Shorting rod storage | 12-11 | 12.4.3.4 | 12-13 |
| 12.4.4.1 Same common ground | 12-11 | 12.4.4.1 | 12-13 |
| 12.4.4.2 Path to ground | 12-11 | 12.4.4.2 | 12-14 |
| 12.4.4.3 Grounding techniques | 12-11 | 12.4.4.3 | 12-14 |
| 12.4.4.4 Nonconductive finishes | 12-11 | 12.4.4.4 | 12-14 |
| 12.4.4.5 Rivet connections | 12-11 | 12.4.4.5 | 12-14 |
| 12.4.4.6 Equipment grounding | 12-11 | 12.4.4.6 | 12-14 |
| 12.4.4.7 Ground connections | 12-12 | 12.4.4.7 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.4.8 Hinges and slides | 12-12 | 12.4.4.8 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.4.9 Panels and doors | 12-12 | 12.4.4.9 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.4.10 Ground wire in the cable | 12-12 | 12.4.4.10 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.4.11 Cable shields as grounds | 12-12 | 12.4.4.11 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.4.12 Test equipment | 12-12 | 12.4.4.12 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.5.1 Insulation of tools | 12-13 | 12.4.5.1 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.5.2 Electrical cords | 12-13 | 12.4.5.2 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.5.3 Exposed surfaces of tools | 12-13 | 12.4.5.3 | 12-15 |
| 12.4.5.4 Same voltage | 12-13 | 12.4.5.4 | 12-16 |
| 12.5.1.1 Protective devices | 12-13 | 12.5.1.1 | 12-16 |
| 12.5.1.2 Carried units | 12-13 | 12.5.1.2 | 12-16 |
| 12.5.1.3 Countersunk screws | 12-13 | 12.5.1.3 | 12-16 |
| 12.5.1.4 Exposed edges | 12-13 | 12.5.1.4 | 12-17 |
| 12.5.1.5 Exposed corners | 12-14 | 12.5.1.5 | 12-18 |
| 12.5.1.6 Projecting components | 12-15 | 12.5.1.6 | 12-18 |
| 12.5.1.7 Latches | 12-15 | 12.5.1.7 | 12-18 |
| 12.5.1.8 Levers, cranks, hooks, and controls | 12-15 | 12.5.1.8 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.1.9 Burr free | 12-15 | 12.5.1.9 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.1.10 Capped bolt threads | 12-15 | 12.5.1.10 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.1.11 Air-exhaust openings | 12-15 | 12.5.1.11 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.2.1 Avoiding accidental contact | 12-15 | 12.5.2.1 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.2.2 Enclosure of hazardous components | 12-15 | 12.5.2.2 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.2.3 Ventilation holes | 12-16 | 12.5.2.3 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.2.4 High-temperature units of equipment | 12-16 | 12.5.2.4 | 12-19 |
| 12.5.2.5 Guard design | 12-16 | 12.5.2.5 | 12-19 |
| 12.6.1 Releasing gases | 12-16 | 12.6.1 | 12-20 |
| 12.6.2 Distinctive types | 12-16 | 12.6.2 | 12-20 |
| 12.6.3 Automatic shutoffs | 12-16 | 12.6.3 | 12-20 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|---------|-------|
| 12.6.4 Avoid spraying fluids | 12-16 | 12.6.4 | 12-20 |
| 12.6.5 Mercury | 12-16 | 12.6.5 | 12-20 |
| 12.6.6 OSHA safety criteria for hazardous gases and liquids | 12-16 | 12.6.6 | 12-20 |
| 12.7.1 Exposure | 12-17 | 12.7.1 | 12-21 |
| 12.7.2 Carbon monoxide | 12-17 | 12.7.2 | 12-21 |
| 12.7.3 Cadmium oxide fumes | 12-17 | 12.7.3 | 12-21 |
| 12.7.4 Fumes from batteries | 12-17 | 12.7.4 | 12-21 |
| 12.7.5 Safety for toxic chemicals and materials | 12-18 | 12.7.5 | 12-21 |
| 12.7.6 Asbestos | 12-18 | 12.7.6 | 12-21 |
| 12.8.1 Radioactive materials | 12-18 | 12.8.1 | 12-22 |
| 12.8.2 Radium | 12-18 | 12.8.2 | 12-22 |
| 12.8.3 Ionizing radiation exposure | 12-18 | 12.8.3 | 12-22 |
| 12.8.4 Microwave and radio frequency radiation | 12-18 | 12.8.4 | 12-22 |
| 12.9.1 Eye Protection | 12-18 | 12.9.1 | 12-23 |
| 12.9.2 Gloves and aprons | 12-19 | 12.9.2 | 12-23 |
| 12.9.3 Large-sized service facilities | 12-19 | 12.9.3 | 12-23 |
| 12.9.4 Small-sized service facilities | 12-19 | 12.9.4 | 12-23 |
| 12.9.5 Cleaning solvents | 12-19 | 12.9.5 | 12-23 |
| 12.9.6 Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) | 12-19 | 12.9.6 | 12-24 |
| 12.9.7 Carcinogens | 12-19 | 12.9.7 | 12-24 |
| 12.10.1 "Touch temperature" contact | 12-19 | 12.10.1 | 12-24 |
| 12.10.2 Perforation size | 12-20 | 12.10.2 | 12-24 |
| 12.11.1 Nonflammable enclosures | 12-20 | 12.11.1 | 12-25 |
| 12.11.2 Flammable materials | 12-20 | 12.11.2 | 12-25 |
| 12.11.3 Flammable gases | 12-20 | 12.11.3 | 12-25 |
| 12.11.4 Fire extinguishers | 12-20 | 12.11.4 | 12-25 |
| 12.11.5 Selection of fire extinguishers | 12-20 | 12.11.5 | 12-25 |
| 12.11.6 Fire protection criteria | 12-21 | 12.11.6 | 12-26 |
| 12.12.1 General noise levels | 12-21 | 12.12.1 | 12-26 |
| 12.12.2 Noise criteria | 12-21 | 12.12.2 | 12-26 |
| 12.12.3 Extreme quiet areas | 12-22 | 12.12.3 | 12-26 |
| 12.12.4 Small office spaces and special areas | 12-22 | 12.12.4 | 12-27 |
| 12.12.5 Operational areas | 12-22 | 12.12.5 | 12-27 |
| 12.12.6 Equipment areas | 12-22 | 12.12.6 | 12-27 |
| 12.12.7 High noise, remote areas | 12-22 | 12.12.7 | 12-27 |
| 12.12.8 Occupational noise exposure and control | 12-22 | 12.12.8 | 12-28 |
| 12.13.1 CRT conformance | 12-23 | 12.13.1 | 12-29 |
| 12.13.2 Terminal end of CRT | 12-23 | 12.13.2 | 12-29 |
| 12.13.3 Explosion | 12-23 | 12.13.3 | 12-29 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|-----------|-------|
| 12.13.4 Minimizing risk of explosion | 12-24 | 12.13.4 | 12-29 |
| 12.13.5 Explosion causing gases | 12-24 | 12.13.5 | 12-29 |
| 12.14.1.1 Exposure limit | 12-24 | 12.14.1.1 | 12-30 |
| 12.14.2.1 Exposure duration greater than 1000 seconds | 12-24 | 12.14.2.1 | 12-31 |
| 12.14.2.2 Exposure duration less than 1000 seconds | 12-24 | 12.14.2.2 | 12-31 |
| 12.14.3.1 Exposure of the eye | 12-26 | 12.14.3.1 | 12-32 |
| 12.14.3.2 Exposure of skin | 12-27 | 12.14.3.2 | 12-33 |
| 12.14.3.3 Removing infrared | 12-27 | 12.14.3.3 | 12-33 |
| 12.14.3.4 Maximum display | 12-27 | 12.14.3.4 | 12-33 |
| 12.14.4.1 Short term exposure | 12-27 | 12.14.4.1 | 12-34 |
| 12.14.4.2 Chronic exposure | 12-28 | 12.14.4.2 | 12-34 |
| 12.14.5.1 Exposure limit | 12-28 | 12.14.5.1 | 12-34 |
| 12.15.1 Laser radiation | 12-28 | 12.15.1 | 12-34 |
| 12.15.2 Laser exposure limits | 12-28 | 12.15.2 | 12-34 |
| 12.15.3 Eye protection from laser lights | 12-28 | 12.15.3 | 12-35 |
| 12.15.4 Labeling of laser protective goggles | 12-28 | 12.15.4 | 12-35 |
| 12.15.6 Laser alignment | 12-29 | 12.15.5 | 12-35 |
| 12.16.1 Warning labels and placards | 12-29 | 12.16.1 | 12-35 |
| 12.16.2 Label and placard design | 12-29 | 12.16.2 | 12-35 |
| 12.16.3 Label and placard design classifications and specifics | 12-29 | 12.16.3 | 12-36 |
| 12.16.4 Label and placard placement | 12-30 | 12.16.4 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.5 Illumination for warning labels and placards | 12-30 | 12.16.5 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.6 Wording for medium voltage labels and placards | 12-30 | 12.16.6 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.7 Wording for high voltage labels and placards | 12-31 | 12.16.7 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.8 Microwave or rf radiation warning labels and placards | 12-31 | 12.16.8 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.9 X radiation shield labels and placards | 12-31 | 12.16.9 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.10 Ionizing radiation symbols | 12-31 | 12.16.10 | 12-37 |
| 12.16.11 Laser warning labels and placards | 12-31 | 12.16.11 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.12 Line identification | 12-31 | 12.16.12 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.13 Electrical labels and placards | 12-31 | 12.16.13 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.14 Center of gravity | 12-31 | 12.16.14 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.15 Weight labels | 12-32 | 12.16.15 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.16 Weight lifting capacity | 12-32 | 12.16.16 | 12-38 |
| 12.16.17 Identifying hazardous areas | 12-32 | 4.3.5 | 4-22 |
| 12.16.18 Identifying hand grasp areas | 12-32 | 4.3.5 | 4-22 |
| 12.16.19 "NO-STEP" labels or placards | 12-32 | 4.3.5 | 4-22 |
| Chapter 13 | | | |
| 13.1.1 General environmental extremes | 13-1 | 13.1.1 | 13-1 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|----------|-------|
| 13.1.2 Deviations from tolerable conditions | 13-1 | 13.1.2 | 13-2 |
| 13.2.1 General ventilating systems and temperature differentials | 13-2 | 13.2.1 | 13-2 |
| 13.2.2 Small enclosure ventilation | 13-2 | 13.2.2 | 13-2 |
| 13.2.3 Large enclosure ventilation | 13-2 | 13.2.3 | 13-3 |
| 13.2.4 Verification of ventilation | 13-3 | 13.2.4 | 13-3 |
| 13.2.5 Protective measures | 13-3 | 13.2.5 | 13-3 |
| 13.2.6 Intakes | 13-3 | 13.2.6 | 13-3 |
| 13.2.7 Control of toxic substances | 13-3 | 13.2.7 | 13-4 |
| 13.3.1 Thermal tolerance and comfort zones | 13-5 | 13.3.1 | 13-6 |
| 13.3.2 Hot air discharge | 13-6 | 13.3.2 | 13-7 |
| 13.3.3 Cold air discharge | 13-6 | 13.3.3 | 13-7 |
| 13.3.4 Minimum effective temperature | 13-6 | 13.3.4 | 13-7 |
| 13.3.5 Maximum effective temperature | 13-6 | 13.3.5 | 13-7 |
| 13.3.6 ET ranges as a function of work activity | 13-6 | 13.3.6 | 13-7 |
| 13.3.7 Arctic clothing | 13-6 | 13.3.7 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.8 Temperature of enclosed workplaces | 13-6 | 13.3.8 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.9 Side wall temperatures | 13-7 | 13.3.9 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.10 Minimum relative humidity | 13-7 | 13.3.10 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.11 Relative humidity | 13-7 | 13.3.11 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.12 Verification of humidity | 13-7 | 13.3.12 | 13-8 |
| 13.3.13 Humidity measurements | 13-7 | 13.3.13 | 13-8 |
| 13.4.1.1 General and supplementary lighting | 13-8 | 13.4.1.1 | 13-9 |
| 13.4.1.2 Dimming capability | 13-8 | 13.4.1.2 | 13-9 |
| 13.4.1.3 Illumination in workplaces | 13-8 | 13.4.1.3 | 13-10 |
| 13.4.2.1 Lighting level | 13-8 | 13.4.2.1 | 13-10 |
| 13.4.2.2 Illumination | 13-8 | 13.4.2.2 | 13-10 |
| 13.4.2.3 Glare | 13-8 | 13.4.2.3 | 13-12 |
| 13.4.3.1 Maximum dark adaptation | 13-10 | 13.4.3.1 | 13-12 |
| 13.4.3.2 Dark adaptation for task performance | 13-10 | 13.4.3.2 | 13-13 |
| 13.4.3.3 Ambient light and dark adaptation | 13-11 | 13.4.3.3 | 13-13 |
| 13.4.4.1 Glare from artificial light sources | 13-11 | 13.4.4.1 | 13-14 |
| 13.4.5.1 Specular reflectance from the task area and the surrounding area | 13-12 | 13.4.5.1 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.5.2 Work surface reflection | 13-12 | 13.4.5.2 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.5.3 Angle of incidence | 13-12 | 13.4.5.3 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.5.4 Polished surfaces | 13-12 | 13.4.5.4 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.5.5 Light source behind maintainer | 13-12 | 13.4.5.5 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.6.1 Wall surface luminance | 13-12 | 13.4.6.1 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.6.2 Maximum and minimum luminance ratio | 13-12 | 13.4.6.2 | 13-15 |

| | | | |
|---|-------|-----------|-------|
| 13.4.6.3 Brightness ratio | 13-12 | 13.4.6.3 | 13-15 |
| 13.4.7.1 Emergency lights | 13-13 | 13.4.7.1 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.2 Controls location | 13-13 | 13.4.7.2 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.3 Artificial illumination controls | 13-14 | 13.4.7.3 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.4 Control identification | 13-14 | 13.4.7.4 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.5 Flicker | 13-14 | 13.4.7.5 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.6 Protection from personnel activity | 13-14 | 13.4.7.6 | 13-17 |
| 13.4.7.7 Portable lights | 13-14 | 13.4.7.7 | 13-17 |
| 13.5.1 Hazardous sound levels | 13-14 | 13.5.1 | 13-18 |
| 13.5.1.1 Reducing sound levels | 13-14 | 13.5.1.1 | 13-18 |
| 13.5.1.2 Providing personal protection | 13-14 | 13.5.1.2 | 13-18 |
| 13.5.1.3 Noise exposure | 13-14 | 13.5.1.3 | 13-19 |
| 13.5.1.4 Monitoring results and corrective action | 13-15 | 13.5.1.4 | 13-19 |
| 13.5.1.6 Hearing protection | 13-15 | 12.12.8 | 12-28 |
| 13.5.2.1 Acoustical design objectives | 13-16 | 13.5.2.1 | 13-19 |
| 13.5.2.2 Personnel acoustical environment | 13-16 | 13.5.2.2 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.3 General noise levels | 13-16 | 13.5.2.3 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.4 Noise criteria | 13-16 | 13.5.2.4 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.5 Extreme quiet areas | 13-16 | 13.5.2.5 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.6 Small office spaces and special areas | 13-16 | 13.5.2.6 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.7 Operational areas | 13-17 | 13.5.2.7 | 13-20 |
| 13.5.2.8 Equipment areas | 13-17 | 13.5.2.8 | 13-21 |
| 13.5.2.9 High noise, remote areas | 13-17 | 13.5.2.9 | 13-21 |
| 13.5.2.10 Occupational noise exposure and control | 13-17 | 13.5.2.10 | 13-21 |
| Chapter 14 | | | |
| 14.1.1.1 Use of data | 14-2 | 14.1.1.1 | 14-2 |
| 14.1.1.2 Data to be used | 14-2 | 14.1.1.2 | 14-3 |
| 14.1.1.3 Using population extremes | 14-2 | 14.1.1.3 | 14-3 |
| 14.1.2.4 Clearance dimension at the 95th percentile | 14-6 | 14.1.2.1 | 14-5 |
| 14.1.2.6 Limiting dimension at the 5th percentile | 14-7 | 14.1.2.2 | 14-5 |
| 14.1.2.8 Adjustable dimensions | 14-7 | 14.1.2.3 | 14-5 |
| 14.1.2.9 Sizing determinations | 14-7 | 14.1.2.4 | 14-5 |
| 14.1.2.10 Critical life support equipment | 14-8 | 14.1.2.5 | 14-5 |
| 14.1.3.1 Misuse of the 50th percentile or of the average | 14-8 | 14.1.3.1 | 14-6 |
| 14.1.3.2 Misperception of the typically sized person | 14-8 | 14.1.3.2 | 14-6 |
| 14.1.3.3 Summation of segment dimensions | 14-8 | 14.1.3.3 | 14-7 |
| 14.1.4.1 Design to body positions and motions of the tasks | 14-9 | 14.1.4.1 | 14-7 |
| 14.1.4.2 Construction or collection of unique position data | 14-9 | 14.1.4.2 | 14-8 |

| | | | |
|--|-------|------------|-------|
| 14.1.4.4 Building and using reach envelopes | 14-10 | 14.1.4.3 | 14-8 |
| 14.1.4.7 Effects of clothing | 14-10 | 14.1.4.4 | 14-9 |
| 14.1.5.1 Gaussian distribution of measurement values on a single human physical characteristic | 14-13 | 14.1.5.1 | 14-11 |
| 14.1.5.2 Using bivariate distribution data | 14-13 | 14.1.5.2 | 14-12 |
| 14.1.5.3 Use of correlation and multiple correlation data | 14-14 | 14.1.5.3 | 14-12 |
| 14.1.6.1 Data applicable to the design problem | 14-15 | 14.1.1.1 | 14-2 |
| 14.1.6.2 Common errors | 14-15 | 14.1.3 | 14-6 |
| 14.1.6.3 Use of design limits approach | 14-15 | 14.1.2 | 14-4 |
| 14.1.6.4 Model treatment of multiple variables | 14-15 | 14.1.4 | 14-6 |
| 14.1.6.5 Joint mobility and reach interaction | 14-15 | 14.3.3.1 | 14-30 |
| 14.2.1 Foreign populations | 14-15 | 14.2.1 | 14-13 |
| 14.2.3 Body slump | 14-15 | 14.2.2 | 14-13 |
| 14.3.1.1 Use of anthropometric and biomechanical data | 14-16 | 14.3.1.1 | 14-13 |
| 14.3.1.2 Task considerations | 14-16 | 14.3.1.2 | 14-14 |
| 14.3.2.1 Static data | 14-16 | 14.3.2.1 | 14-14 |
| 14.3.3.1.1 Trunk movement | 14-31 | 14.3.3.1.1 | 14-28 |
| 14.3.3.1.2 Whole body movement | 14-31 | 14.3.3.1.2 | 14-29 |
| 14.3.3.2.1 Single joint movements | 14-31 | 14.3.3.2.1 | 14-29 |
| 14.3.3.2.2 Range of motion for two joints | 14-34 | 14.3.3.2.2 | 14-33 |
| 14.4.2 Reach envelope data collection | 14-37 | 14.4.2 | 14-36 |
| 14.4.4 Reach envelope interaction with the reach task | 14-38 | 14.4.3 | 14-37 |
| 14.5.1 Muscle strength factors | 14-42 | 14.5.1 | 14-42 |
| 14.5.2 Exerted forces | 14-43 | 14.5.2 | 14-43 |
| 14.5.2.1 Maximum young male force or resistance for a control | 14-43 | 14.5.2.1 | 14-43 |
| 14.5.2.2 Increasing strength values | 14-45 | 14.5.2.2 | 14-45 |
| 14.5.2.4 Comparative strength | 14-46 | 14.5.2.3 | 14-46 |
| 14.5.2.5 Preventing tremor in positive control performances | 14-46 | 14.5.2.4 | 14-46 |
| 14.5.3.1 Horizontal direction of force | 14-45 | 14.5.3.1 | 14-47 |
| 14.5.3.2 Vertical direction of force | 14-48 | 14.5.3.2 | 14-48 |
| 14.5.3.3 Forces for handles | 14-48 | 4.2.5.1.5 | 4-9 |
| 14.5.4.1 Lifting and carrying limits | 14-52 | 14.5.4.1 | 14-52 |